SOME

IMPROVEMENTS

To the ART of

TEACHING

Especially in

The First Grounding

OF A

YOUNG SCHOLAR

in Grammar Learning.

Shewing a Short, Sure, and Easie way to bring a Scholar to *Variety* and *Elegancy* in Writing Latine.

Written for the Help and Ease of all *Ushers* of Schools, and *Country School-Masters*, and for the Use and Profit of all *Younger Scholars*.

By WILLIAM WALKER B. D.
Author of the Treatise of English Particles.

Fundamento tota domus nititur, Cic.

LONDON, Printed by *S. Griffin*, and are to be sold by *Ben. Tooke* in *Duck-Lane*. 1669.

IMPRIMATUR.

Tho. Tomkyn. RR^imo, in Christo Patri ac Domino Dom. *Gilberto* Divinâ Providentiâ Archi-Episcopo *Cantuariensi* a Sacris Domesticis.

470.7
W15s
1669

To the Right Reverend FATHER IN GOD WILLIAM

By Divine Providence Lord Bishop of LINCOLNE, My very good Lord and Diocesan.

WILLIAM WALKER *Rector of* Colsterworth *wisheth all happiness both temporal and eternal.*

MY LORD,

THIS *is an Age of* Projects *and* Experiments, *much is done both ways, as well in* Sepculative *as* Practical *Arts and Sciences. No wonder therefore, if amongst the rest of the busie headed, and busie handed ones, I also have busied both my head and hand to be doing something, though all I could doe, were but like* Diogenes, *to rumble my Tub up and*

682170

down the streets, and keep others from sleeping at noon day. Example, though it be no irresistible compeller *unto action, yet is a very powerfull* perswader *unto imitation. Here I doe with all humility offer to your* Lordships *hand, and by that (as that which will be its best recommendation) unto the world something both of* Project *and of* Experiment, *in that part of Literature, wherein my self have for the most of my time been more or less conversant, which is* The Grounding of a young Schollar in Grammar Learning. *That I dedicate it to your* Lordships *Name many are the inducements that draw me to it. To say I doe it* to welcom *your Lordship into this your Dioceſs, By an honourary testification to the world of my joy for the coming of a Bishop among us, from whose Presidency over us, so many good things do promise themselves to us, and doe seem, like golden Apples from a laden bough to bend down toward us, and court their acceptance from us, and even ready to drop themselves upon us, this alone were a competently fair account there-*

of

of. *Those* Primitive Episcopal Vertues *in your Lordship, whose bright emanations from you, like beames from the Sun doe irradiate your Diocess, to the chearing and comforting of the hearts of all the Sons of true piety and honour in it, and to the obliging of all persons who have in themselves any sense of, and are capable of being obliged by, another's Goodness, both are of worth to deserve, and of power to command a much more noble* gratulation, *than this Dedication can possibly amount, or dares indeed aspire unto.* Honour *to your Lordship, 'tis a debt which all men owe to your* Vertue, *and which I this way chuse to pay, because 'tis not only the best but the propereſt, if not the onliest way that I have to pay it.*

But though this be the first, and my most noble inducement, yet there are others, which doe sway very much with me also. This is one, that as your Lordship doth excell in the highest; and most noble parts of Literature, so you have great skill in this *also though less noble and less honoured, yet no less useful, no less necessary part of*

it, and so are the better able to take the true measure of, and to give the right judgement upon my design in this Manual. It is a comfort to a Writer to have a judicious Patron to countenance his Work; that being the first thing that bespeakes his entertainment as an Authour into the World. Another (and I shall trouble your Lordship with no more) is this, that it seemed a most suitable thing in me then to dedicate a Book of the Grounding of a a young Scholar in Grammar Learning *to your Lordship, when your Lordship was just a designing* the setting up of a Grammar School in the City of *Lincoln* (*the place of my Nativity and Education*) for the Grounding of young Scholars therein. *Wherein you shew your self a right Wise Master builder and so the fitter to be ordained a repairer to the ruines of this decayed Church: for to see that the Churches foundation be rightly laid, is the way to have its Superstructures long to hold; and the* School *is the propereſt place for the laying of the first stones of the* Churches *foundation in. To-*

wards

wards which, as it is my desire *so it will be my* honour, *and shall be my* happiness *to be serviceable in any way in any measure, and under any capacity, though it be but that of the meanest under-server. If I may but fetch, though I cannot fit materialls for the work, or if I may but hew stones, and temper morter; though I be not able yet to lay a stone in the building; it will be a very great satisfaction, and no less a contentment to me. And now, that I be not unpardonably tedious in the address of so little a Present to so great a Patron, I shall beg your Lordships pardon for the boldness of this attempt, and beg of God for your Lordship length to your days, health to your person, success to your designes and a blessing upon your labours, that the work of the Lord may prosper in your hands, to his glory, your honour, and the good of this Church both in this present and in the future ages of it. And so rests*

Your Lordships most humble
Servant

Colsterworth,
Decem.. 1. 1668.

WILL. WALKER.

THE
Preface to the Reader.

Courteous Reader,

HAving ſpent many years of my Life in the exerciſe of *Teaching* Scholars; and having in that time travelled much to find out, by what means I might *improve* the *Art of teaching*, eſpecially in that part of it, which is moſt *neceſſary* to be well minded, and yet of all other the *moſt neglected* which is the very *Firſt Grounding of the Scholar*, and laying the Foundation of all his future attainments; and having by ſearching found out ſomething conducible to that end, and ſeen the uſefulneſs thereof in the experiencing of it, to the intent I might ſave others ſomewhat of the labour, which that ſearch had coſt me, and help them in that way, from which I was called off by my *Miniſterial Imployment* to other Studies, I did, after I had left off

off to be a *Publick Schoolmaster*, throw into these Papers those *advices* and *counsells* to the industrious *Teacher*, those *helps* and *furtherances* to the studious *Learner*, which now I expose to publick view; and which, if diligently perused, and made use of, will (by the blessing of God) very much *ease* the trouble of the one, and not a little promote the *profiting* of the other, so as that the one shall follow his *Teaching* with *delight*, and the other proceed in his *Learning* with *comfort*, and both come off from their several employments with *reputation* and *credit*. And now having acquainted thee with thus much, I shall beg thy prayers for God's blessing on this design, that it may turn to his honour and his Churches good, and so, without further trouble to my self or thee, for the present rest

Thy Servant for the
Common good
W. W.

A Summary Account of the ensuing Treatise.

CHAP. I. *Of the Forming of Nouns* Page 1.
The English Signes of Cases to be well known p. 2.
The manner of Forming Nouns through every case of every Declension. p. 2.
Of the various Terminations of sundry Cases. p. 4.
Of the Dative case plural of the first Declension. p. 4.
Of the Vocat. singular of the Second Declension p. 5.
Of Nouns ending in us *in the Vocat. sing. of the Second Declens.* p. 5.
Of [i] *in the Vocat. from Nominatives in* us. p. 6.
Of ai *and* ei *in the Vocative Sin.* p. 6.
Of the Accus. singular of the third Declens. p. 6.
Nouns ending in im. p. 7.
Nouns ending in em *&* im. p. 7.
Of the Ablative Sing. of the Third Declens. p. 7.
Nouns having in their Abl. Sing. p. 7.
The Ablat. of Neuters in al. p. 7. *in* ar. p. 9. *or* e. p. 8.
The Abl. of Adject. in is *or* er. p. 8.
The Ablative of Adjectives derived of proper names. 9.

The

The Ablative of Words having only im *in the accusative case.* 9.
Nouns having both e *and* i *in the abl. Sing.* 10.
The abl. Sing. of Substances having em, *and* im *in their accus.* 10.
The abl. of Adjectives of one termination. 11.
Of par *and his compounds* 11.
The abl. of Adjectives of the comparative degree. 12.
Of the terminations eis *and* is *in the Nom. and Accus. Plural of the third Declens.* 12.
Of the Nom. and Accus. Plu. of the third Declens. in the neuter gender. 13.
What words of the third Declens. end in a. *and what in* ia 13.
Of the Gen. Plur. of the third Declens. 13.
What words have ium *in the Gen. Plur.* 14.
The Genetive of words having i *in their Abl. Sin.* 14.
The Genetive Plural of words of two or more syllables ending with two consonants. 15.
The Gen. Plur. of Nouns in er, es, *and* is *not increasing.* 15.
The Genetive Plur. of Polliſyllables increasing in the Gen. Sing. 16.
The Gen. Plur. of several sorts of monosyllables 16
The Gen. Plur. in ium *syncopated* 17.
Some in ium *have also* orum 18.
Greek words in ma *having both* um *and* orum *in their Gen. Plur.* 18.

Of

Of on *in the Gen. Plur.*
Of the Dat. Plur. of the third Declenſ. 19.
Neuter Greek words having both ibus *and* is *in the Dat. and Abl. Plur.* 19.
Of the Gen. Sing. of the fourth Declenſ. 20.
Of words of the fourth Declenſ. having i. *in the Gen. caſe* p. 20. *and* is, *and* uis. ib.
Of the Dative Sing. of the fourth Declenſ. 20.
Of words having u *in the Dative Sing. of the the fourth declenſ.* 20.
Of the Abl. Sing. of the fourth Declenſ. 21.
Of the Gen. Plur. of the fourth Declenſ. 21.
Of the Dat. Plur. of the fourth Declenſ. 21.
Of words ending in ubus. 21.
and both ubus, *and* ibus. ibid.
Of the Gen. Sing. of the fifth Declenſ. 22.
Of es *in the Gen. Sing. of the fifth Declenſ.* 22.
and i *and* e ibid.
Of e *in the Dat. Sing. of the Fifth Declenſ.* 23.
CHAP. II. *Of the Comparing of Adjectives*
The way to learn it. 23.
Of irregular compariſons 24.
Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Poſitives having a vowel before us 25.
Of Defective Compariſons 26.
Adjectives wanting the Poſitive degree 26.
Adjectives wanting the Comparative degree 26.
Adjectives wanting the Suverlative degree 27.
Adjectives wanting both the Poſitive and Superlative degres 27.

Of

Of redundant Comparisons 28.
Two Superlatives from the Positive 28.
A Comparitive formed from a Superlative 28.
Adjectives not compared 28, 29.
CHAP. III. *Of the forming of Verbs* 30.
The Tenses formed one from another 30.
The way to learn to form Verbs 31.
The benefit of forming Verbs 32.
Of Verbs Defective 33.
CHAP. IV. *Of Translating English into Latine* 37.
The time for a Scholar to begin to make Latine 37.
Making Latine best begun with translating 37.
In translating the natural order of words to be observed 38.
Rules touching the natural order of words 39.
The way to teach the Natural Order of Words 39.
The first entring of a Scholar into translating 40.
Directions for making plain Latine 40.
Directions to bring Children to understand the difficulties about the Relative 54.
Of the Ablative case Absolute 57.
What the Teacher is to do with and at his Scholars translation 58.
Parsing to be performed by the Scholar alone 58, 59.
Englishes for translation to be contrived suitable to the Grammar Rules 60.
Examples of such Englishes in the first Concord 61. *-in the second Concord* 83. *-in the third Concord* 94.

CHAP.

CHAP. V. *Of the Artificial Order and Elegant placing of words* 117. -*and clauses* 126.
CHAP. VI. *Of the use of Phrases* 128.
How to store a Scholar with Phraises 128.
A Collection of Phrases out of Godwins *Antiquities* 130.
A Collection of Phrases out of Hermes Anglo-Latinus. 148.
How to shew the use of Phrases 165.
CHAP. VII. *Of Variation of Phrases* 167.
Rules of Variation 167.
How to Vary a Verb Active 167. -*Passive* 168. -*Abl. case Absolute* 168. -*Adject. with* res 169 -*Adjective of the neuter gender* 169. -*Latter of two Substantives* 169. -*Adjective Absolute in the neuter with his Genitive case* 170. -*Adjective with his Substantive wherewith he agrees* 170. -*Accusative case before an Infinitive Mood* 170. *Nominative case with his Verb and* quod *or* ut. 171. -Habeo 171. -*Genetiv. case, with his own partitive* 171. -*Genetive case after Suparlative degree* 172 -*Infinitive Mood Active* 172. *Infinitive passive after an Adjective* 172. -*Comparative degree* 173. -*Superlative degree* 173. -*Single words* 174. -*Sentences* 176
CHAP. VIII. *Of the Elegancies of the Particles* 180.
Particles elegantly used, where others are unelegant 181.

un-

Particles elegantly used for others, which are not unelegant 184.

Particles elegantly used in contexture together with others 191.

CHAP. IX. *Of the Idioms of English and Latine* 168.

How to bring a Scholar to render English Proprieties according to the Propriety of the Latine. 198.

Ten English Dialogues consisting of Idiomatical expressions contrived on purpose for translation, and to bring children off from the baldness of a verbal translating to a more elegant way of writing 203.

One English Dialogue, with a threefold Latine translation of it, to exemplifie variety of elegant translatings of the same English Idiome 208.

William Morris
his book 1691

Robt Morris
his book 1691 amen

Robert Norris His Book 1723

There is lately printed a Treatise of the same Authors, entituled *Troposchematologiæ Rhetoricæ Libri duo*, very useful for Grammar Schools.

THE ART OF TEACHING,

Improved in the grounding of a Young Scholar in the Latine TONGUE.

CHAP. I.

Chap. 1.

Of the Forming of Nouns.

of the forming of nouns

INtending to write not upon every thing, that is to be performed by the *Teacher*, or preſcribed to the *Learner* of the Latine Tongue, but onely on ſome particular obſervables conducing to the grounding of a young Scholar therein, begin I with that which is both moſt neceſſary, and moſt uſeful, the Declining or *Forming of Nouns*: touching which the Directions to the Teacher are as followeth.

Non ut omnia dicerem, ſectatus, quod infinitum erat; ſed ut maximè neceſſaria

Quintil. l. 1. c. 9.

First, In the learning of the Declenſions of Nouns make your Scholars to attend unto, and be expert

in the Engliſh ſigns of every ſeveral Caſe, by making them together with the Latine Nouns, which they decline, to give the Engliſh: thus, Nom. *Muſa*, a ſong. Gen. *Muſæ*, of a ſong. Dat. *Muſæ*, to a ſong. Accuſ. *Muſam*, a, *or*, the ſong, &c. This initiates them in the Practice of rendring Latine into Engliſh.

Secondly, Uſe them not onely to give the Engliſh, for the Latine, but alſo *vice versâ*, the Latine for the Engliſh, thus, a ſong, *Muſa*; of a ſong, *Muſæ*; to a ſong, *Muſæ*, &c. This initiates them in the skill of turning Engliſh into Latine.

Thirdly, Practice them in declining forwards and backwards, *i.e.* Latine before Engliſh, and Engliſh before Latine Subſtantives and Adjectives, firſt of like Termination in all caſes, as *Muſa jucunda*: then of unlike termination, firſt in fewer caſes, as *dies ſplendens*; then in more, as *Poëta doctus*, *lapis pretioſus*, *ficus pulla*, &c. and ſo far as may be done in all Declenſions; This exerciſe, as being directly the practice of all the ſecond concord, will be of very great uſe to them in making of Latine.

Fourthly, When they are perfect in the terminations of the caſes of every ſeveral Declenſion, then exerciſe them in giving the terminations of every caſe throughout all the Declenſions together: after this manner.

The *Gen.* caſe ſingular of the firſt declenſion ends in *æ*, as *Muſæ*; of the ſecond in *i*, as *Magiſtri*; of the third in *is*, as *lapidis*; of the fourth in *us*, as *manus*; of the fifth in *ei*, as *Diei*.

The *Dative* caſe ſingular of the firſt Declenſion ends in *æ*, as *Muſæ*; of the ſecond in *o*, as *Magiſtro*; of the third in *i*, as *Lapidi*; of the fourth in *ui*, as *manui*; of the fifth in *ei*, as *diei*.

The *Accuſative* caſe ſingular of the firſt Declenſion ends in *am*, as *Muſam*; of the ſecond in *um*, as *Ma-*

Magiſtrum; of the third in *em*, as *Lapidem*; or *im*, as *Sitim*; or *em* and *im*, as *Febrem* and *Febrim*; of the fourth in *um*, as *Manum*; of the fifth in *em*, as *Diem*.

The *Vocative* is like the *Nominative*: except in ſome Nouns of the ſecond Declenſion, which end in *us* or *ius*.

The *Ablative* caſe ſingular of the firſt Declenſion *a*, as *Muſa*; of the ſecond Declenſion *o*, as *Magiſtro*; of the third Declenſion *e*, as *Lapide*; of the fourth *u*, as *Manu*; of the fifth in *e*, as *Die*.

The *Nominative* caſe plural of the firſt Declenſion ends in *æ*, as *Muſæ*; of the ſecond in *i*, as *Magiſtri*; of the third in *es*, as *Lapides*; of the fourth in *us*, as *Manus*; of the fifth in *es*, as *Dies*.

The *Genitive* caſe plural of the firſt Declenſion ends in *arum*, as *Muſarum*; of the ſecond in *orum*, as *Magiſtrorum*; of the third *um*, as *Lapidum*, or *ium*, as *Febrium*; of the fourth in *uum*, as *Manuum*; of the fifth in *erum*, as *Dierum*.

The *Dative* caſe plural of the firſt Declenſion ends in *is*, as *Muſis*; or *abus*, as *Mulabus*; or *is* and *abus*, as *Filiis* and *Filiabus*; of the ſecond in *is*, as *Magiſtris*; of the third in *ibus*, as *Lapidibus*; of the fourth in *ibus*, as *manibus*; of the fifth in *ebus*, as *Diebus*.

The *Accuſative* caſe plural of the firſt Declenſion ends in *as*, as *Muſas*; of the ſecond in *os*, as *Magiſtros*; of the third in *es*, as *Lapides*; of the fourth in *us*, as *Manus*; of the fifth in *es*, as *Dies*.

The *Vocative* like the *Nominative*, and the *Ablative* like the *Dative*.

Note that all Nouns of the Neuter Gender of what Declenſion ſoever, and in what termination ſoever, have their Nominative, Accuſative, and Vocative alike in both numbers, and in the plural Number end all in *a*; except *ambo* and *duo*, and words in-

declinable, as *centum, viginti, mille, tot,* &c.

In the Declenſions it is viſible, there be ſeveral caſes, which admit of *a variety of terminations*: now for as much as it may be very uſeful to Learners to know ſomething of certainty in that variety, I ſhall here, for that cauſe, give the Reader ſome account thereof.

Of the various Terminations of ſundry Caſes.

That ſome Nouns of the firſt Declenſion end in *abus* in the Dative Plural, the example producible would, if doubted, clearly evince it. The ground of adding this Termination in *abus* to the former in *is*, was to diſtinguiſh the words, that are ſo declined, from other words of neer ſignification, whoſe Dative plural ends in *is*.

The words that have *abus* in the Dative plural are *filia, nata, Dea, liberta, equa, mula, ſerva, conſerva, aſina, ſocia, anima.* Of which *Mula* and *Liberta* are hardly, if ever, read in any other termination, but *abus*: the reſt are found to have both *is*, and *abus*, *Juſtin. l. 7. Adhibitis in convivium ſuum filiis, & uxoribus, & filiabus.* Plaut. Stich. ac 4. *Sed ego ibo intro, & gratulabor veſtrum adventum filiis.* Cic. pro Rabir. *Ab Jove Optimo Maximo cæteriſque diis deabuſque immortalibus pacem ac veniam peto.* Varro de R. R. l. 3. c. 16. *His diis* (ſpeaking of the Muſes, whoſe Birds the Bees were ſaid to be) *Helicona atque Olympum attribuerunt homines. Palladius* ſpeaking of the month of *March*, ſaith, *hoc menſe ſaginati, ac paſti antè admiſſarii generoſis equabus admittendi ſunt.* Varro de R. R. l. 2. c. 1. ſpeaking of the Mares in *Luſitania*, which are ſaid to conceive by the Wind, ſaith, *Sed ex his equis qui nati pulli non plus triennium vivunt.* See more in *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 4. *Alvar. Inſtit.*

ſtit. Gram. p. 196. *Voſſ. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 31. *Rhen. Gram. Lat.* p. 47. *Hayne Lat. Gram.* p. 15, *Ram. Lat Gram.* l. 1. c. 7. *Farnab. Lat. Gram.* p. 7.

That Nouns of the Second Declenſion ending in *us* in the Nom. Caſe, do end in *e* in the Vocative, is too apparent to be doubted. Even in other Terminations anciently the Voc. caſe was diſtinguiſhed from the Nominative. Whence *puere* for *puer* is cited by *Priſcian.* l. 7. out of *Cæcilius* and *Afranius* --*Age, age puere, Duce me ad patrios fines decoratum opiparè.* And *O puere, puere ſine me proſpicere mihi.* But whether any ending in *us* in the Nom. do end alſo in *us* in the Vocat. may be a doubt.

In *Sidonius Carm.* 22. we may read —— *Naiadas iſtic Nereïdum chorus alme doce.* In *Livie* l. 1. ann. V. C. is read, *Audi Jupiter, audi pater patrate populi Albani, audi tu populus Albanus.* But in theſe, and the like Examples, either there is a Greciſme; for in the *Attick Dialect* the Nom. and Voc. end both alike: or an Enallage of the Caſe, the Nom. being put for the Voc. whereof there be many Examples both in Subſtantives and Adjectives, which yet are not therefore ſaid to have a Voc. in *e.* and in *us. Virg.* 1 *Æn. Adſis lætitiæ Bacchus datur* —— *Perſ.* 1 *Sat. Vos O patricius ſanguis*——. Inſomuch that even *Deus* in the Voc. caſe is an *Atticiſme.* As Θεὸς in Greek is uſed for Θεὲ which is alſo read: ſo *Deus* in Latine for *Dee* which is alſo read, though but in Greek Eccleſiaſtical Writers *Tertullian.* l 1. *adverſ. Marcion. Gratus eſſes, ô Dee hæretice, ſi iſſes in diſpoſitionem creatoris. Prudent. in Hamartigenia, O Dee cuncti-potens.* So that the proper Termination of Nouns in *us* of the Second Declenſ. is *e*, the other in *us* is figurative. Only *Vulgus* hath both *us* and *e*: but

e as a Maſculine, *us* as a Neuter, unleſs the Voc. in *us* be remaining of the old declining of this word of the fourth Declenſion whence *Chariſius* cites from *Varro*, *A vulgu condemnaretur.*

The ſame may be ſaid touching thoſe in *ius* with a vowel or ſimple *i* before *us*, whether Proper or Common, which now end in *i* in the Voc. caſe. Their proper Termination is *e*. As *fluvie* and *ſocie* is read, ſo was read alſo *filie*, and *Genie*, *Antonie*, *Virgilie*: of which the *e* being by an *Apocope* cut off, there is now remaining in uſe only *fili*, *Geni* &c. But Perſonal Adjectives ſtill retain the proper Termination in *e*, as *Cynthius Cynthye*, *Delius Delie*, &c. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 5.

As for thoſe that end in *ius* with a Conſonant *j*, or a dipthong *ai*, or *ei*, before *us*, ſuch as *Cajus*, *Majus*, *Pompejus*, *Vultejus* their Termination is, and, I ſuppoſe, always was *i*, this Voc. being formed of the Nom. by putting away *us*, and either reſolving the diphthong into its Vowel, or turning the Conſonant *i* into *i* Vowel. Unleſs any, ſuppoſing it to be a diphthong that in theſe words precedes *us*, will have the Voc. to end in that diphthong, as indeed *Pompei* and *Vultei*, of two Syllables may be read. *Horat.* od. 7. l. 2. *Pompei meorum prime Sodalium*, and *Ep.* 7. l. 1. *Curus ait*, *Vultei*, *nimis attentuſque videris.* However uſe now reſolves the diphthong. Hence *Martial* l. 10. *Ep.* 16. *Si donare vocas promittere nec dare Cai.* and *Auſon. de Menſib. Maja dea an major*, *an Maï*, *te fecerit ætas*, *Ambigo.* See *Voſſ.* de *Analog.* l. 2. c. 5. & 20.

Of the Accuſative caſe Singular of the Third Declenſion the ordinary Termination is *em*: yet there

there are ſome that end only in *im*; and ſome that doth end both in *em* and *im*.

Ending in *im* theſe are reckoned up by Grammarians.

Vim, ravim, ſitim, charybdim, tuſſim.
Mephitim, Cannabim, magidarim, and *annuſim,*
Præſepim, Syrtim, Opim, pelvim, burim,
Sinapim, Cucumim, Leucuſpim, and *Securim,*
and alſo theſe,
Albim, fabarim, Baſtim, Tanaim, Tigrim,
Ararim, Atheſim, Ligerim, Tiberim and *Tibrim.*
Halys hath *Halym,* and *Halyn.*

Ending both in *em* and *im* are reckoned up theſe,

Aqualis, cutis, turris, reſtis, navis.
Sementis, puppis, bipennis, febris, clavis.

But in theſe, *Febris, navis, aqualis* and *clavis, em* is the more uſual Termination: as is alſo *im* in theſe three *puppis, turris,* and *reſtis*; to which may be added *ſtrigilis,* reckoned by *Daneſius* amongſt them that have, and acknowledged by *Voſſius* to have had *em,* as well as *im. Daneſ. Schol.* p. 47. *Voſſ. de Anal.* l. 2. p. 302.

Of the Ablative Caſe Singular of the Third Declenſion *e* is the ordinary and regular Termination. Yet there are ſome that end in *i*; and ſome that have both *e* and *i* in the Ablative Caſe.

Of Nouns that make their Ablative in *i* only, there are theſe ſorts.

1. Neuters in *al,* increaſing long as *animal,* abl. *animali.* Yet hoc *Sal* hath *Sale*: but that may

be the ablative of *hic ſal*, which is far the more uſual, beſides that the *penultima* of it is ſhort.

2. Neuters in *ar*, if their laſt ſyllable, but one in the gen. caſe be by nature long: as *calcar, calcaris*. But if the *penultima genitivi* be either ſhort, as *hepar hepatis*; or but long by poſition, as *far farris*, then the Ablat. ends in *e* *hepate, jubare, nectare, lucare, farre*. Yet Poets ſometimes form an Ablat. in *e* of Nouns producing their laſt ſyllable ſave one: as *Virgil. in Culice. Si nitor auri ſub laqueare domûs animum non tangit avarum.*

3. Neuters appellatives in *e*: as *cubile, cubili*; *apluſtre apluſtri*. Except *gauſape* the abl. of hoc *gauſape*, (no ſuch word as *gauſapis*, for it to come of, being read) as in that of *Plin. l.8. c. 48. Nam tunica laticlavi in modum gauſape texi nunc primùm incipit*; who a little before had uſed the ſame word in the Nominat. *Antiquis enim torus è ſtramento erat, qualiter etiam nunc in caſtris gauſape. Ovid* hath *mare* in the Ablat. caſe l.5. *Triſt. El. 2 Exiguum pleno de mare demat aquæ. & Pont. l. 4. & 6. Euxino de mare vertet iter.* So *Plaut. Mil.* 4.7. *Namſi à mare abſtinuiſſem--* as ſome Copies read it. It would be very ſparingly, if at all uſed. *Rete* is read in the Ablat. but that is from the old Nom. *retis*; as *præſepe* from *præſepis*. Theſe proper Neuters in *e* are ſaid to have *e* in the Ablat. viz. *Præneste, Cære, Bibracte, Nepete, Reate, Soracte*, See *Voſſ. de Analog. l. 2. c. 11.* But *Daneſius* thinks them not to appertain to the preſent conſideration; as being indeclinable words, as *Alvar.* alſo ſaith p. 211. (no nor *præſepe* and *gauſape*, which are not declined) though *ſoracte* may come of *Soractis*: for *Pliny* hath, *Sacrificio annuo quod fit ad montem Soractem l.7.c.2.* See *Daneſ. ſchol. l.1.c. 13.*

4. Adjectives in *is* and *er* (having their neuters end in *e*) as *fortis, forti*; *acer, acri*. Whether refer

Names

Names of Months, *Aprilis Aprili* e *December Decembri*, as being in their nature Adjectives. Hither refer alſo *memor, memori*, and *immemor immemori*, as comming of *memoris* and *immemoris*. Yet *Ovid* hath uſed *cœleſte* and *bimeſtre* in the Abl. caſe. See *Alvar.* p. 211. *Daneſ. Schol.* l. 1. c. 1. 3. & *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 11 who out of *Chariſius* cites in the Ablat. caſe (from *Pomponius*) *humile rege*; and *incolume illo*; and *cum contubernale pugnavi*; and from *Cicero quo, ſtante & incolume; & aliquo excellente & nobile viro*; from *Nepos, virgine Veſtale*; and from *Saluſt agreſte*.

But proper Names derived of Adjectives in *is*, have *e* in the Ablat. So *Martial* l. 7. ep. 23. *Cum Juvenale meo--Cic. pro Planc. Confiteor ſumma in Laterenſe ornamenta eſſe*. So *Annalis, Cerealis, Vitalis, Natalis, Nobilis, Celeris, Appollinaris*. See *Voſſ. de Analog. l.* 2. *c.* 11, Hither refer *affinis, rivalis, familiaris, contubernalis, popularis, ſodalis, ædilis, annalis, biremis, natalis*, as alſo *bipennis*, which have their Ablatives properly in *i*, as being originally Adjectives. Though again as being uſed Subſtantively, they have ſometimes an Abl. in *e*. So as *volucris* the Subſtantive hath *e*, the Adject *i*; *rudis* the Subſt, *e*, the Adj. *i*. See *Daneſ.* and *Voſſ. loc. ſup. cit.*

5. Words ending only in *im* in the Accu. caſe, as *vim vi*; *ravim ravi*, &c. Yet *Livie* hath *Superato Bœte amne* from *Bœtim: Boeth. l.* 3. *de Conſol. Phil Carm.* 12. hath *longâ ſite perditus* from *ſitim*; *Perſ. Sat.* 5, *Tibi tortâ cannabe fulto. Cœna ſit in tranſtro*, from *cannabim*. Words of a Greek original encreaſing in the Gen. caſe and having two terminations in the Acc. one in *em*, and another in *im*, as *Thetis Thetidos*; *Thetidem* and *Thetim*, rather have *e* than *i*, as *Thetide* rather than *Theti* (though *Plautus* have

have that too *Epid.* 1. 1.) ſo *Daphnide*, not *Daphni*, &c. Becauſe the Ablat. follows the Dative (not the Accuſ.) which in Greek words are the ſame, the Dative ſtanding for both. *Arare* in *Cæſar* l. 1. *Bel. Gal.* is not from *Araris*, which makes *Arari*: but from *Arar*, which he in the ſame Book uſeth. *Flumen eſt Arar, quod per fines Æduorum in Rhodanum influit. Voſsius* to thoſe that end in *i* only adds *canalis*, and *ſtrigilis*, de *Analog.* l. 2. c. 11. p. 297. proving their Termination ſuch from *Quintil. Plin. Hor.* and adding as his reaſon, *Quid mirum, quando accuſativum, uti oſtenſum, per* im *efferunt*? Yet afterwards ſee c. 12. p. 302. having from *Hor.* and *Cic.* proved, that there is *nave* and *navi*, as *navem*, and *navim*, he adds *etiam ut ſtrigilem & ſtrigilim dixere: ſic ſtrigile & ſtrigili*, citing for *ſtrigile Plin. Secund.* out of *Chariſius*, as *Horace* for *ſtrigili*. I ſuppoſe he means that *ſtrigili* is now only in uſe, though *ſtrigile* were formerly uſed: or that it may more ſafely be uſed, as indeed he explicates himſelf p. 303. Saying, *Interea tutius ſtrigili per* i. *uſurpatur.*

Of Nouns that have both *e* and *i* in the Ablat. there are theſe ſorts.

I. *Subſtantives* which have in their Accuſ. both *em* and *im*: as *puppem* & *puppim*, *puppe* & *puppi* &c.

There are alſo found ſometimes theſe Ablatives, in *i* of words that have alſo a more uſual ablat. in *e*. *Avi, civi, claſsi, colli, fimi, furfuri, fuſti, igni, imbri, navi, occipiti, orbi, ovi, parti, poſti, ſordi, ſorti, ſupellectili, vecti, ungui*, of which there be Examples in *Voſſ.* de *Analog.* l. 2. c. 12 *Daneſ. Schol.* l. 1. c. 13. & *Alvar. de Inſtit. Gram.* p. 211. Others beſide are named, viz. *Affinitati, alipedi, angui,*

angui, assi, cani, labi, luci, mani, mugili, nepti, stercori, tempori, vesperi, but not with like Authenticknes either for Author, or Edition. Hither referr those proper names of Places *Carthagini, Sidoni, Lacædemoni, Tiburi, Sicyoni, Anxuri*, &c. so *ruri*, which are mistaken to be Datives, but are the old Ablatives in *i* of words that have other usual Ablatives in *e*. See *Voss. de Constructi.* c. 46.

II. *Adjectives* of one Termination as *felix felice vel felici: vetus veteré vel veteri, recens recente vel recenti, Arpinas, Arpinate, vel Arpinati*: though in this last sort *e* is most usual. Hither refer Participles and Participials in *ns*, as *excellente* & *excellenti*; *ardente* & *ardenti*, &c. unless they be put Absolute: for then the Termination *e* is to be used, not *i*; as *Imperante Augusto*, not *Imperanti*. Hither also referr *vigil* and *artifex* used Adjectively, as being then found to have an Ablative also in *i*. So *Stat. Achil. Aspicit intentum vigilique hac aure trahentem.* ib. *Qualiter artifici victuræ pollice ceræ! Accipiunt formas.* So also *uber* and *degener*, *dives* and *Locuples*. For *Curt.* l. 3. hath *uberi & pingui solo*, and *Lucan.* l. 4. *Si me degeneri stravissent facta sub hoste*, and *Plin*, l. 3. c. 1. *Diviti cultu*, and *Cic.* 3. *de Orat. Locupleti oratione.* Lastly hither referr *victrix* and *ultrix* which have *e* and *i*. as *Ovid.* 1. *Fast.* hath *Dextrâ cecidit victrice*: so *Lucan.* l. 1. *In sua victrici conversum viscera ferro*; and saith *Vossius*, *par ratio in* ultrix *Prisciano teste.*

But *par* the Adjective (as being anciently *paris*) hath only *pari* (as *par the* Substantive (for a *mate* or *fellow*) *pare*) and yet the compounds *compar* and *impar* have both *e* and *i*.

And

And ſo verballs in *trix* taken ſubſtantively have only *e*: as *nutrix*, *netrix*, *obſtetrix*, *ce* See *Alvar.* p. 211. *Daneſ. Schol.* p. 50, 51. *Voſſ. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 47, 48. & de *Analog. l.* 2. *c.* 12.

3. Thirdly, *Adjectives of the Comparative Degree* as well maſculines, and feminines, as neuters, as *Major*, and *Majus*, *majore* vel *majori*. *Cæſ. l.* 2. *de Bel. civ.* hath *Majori cum fiduciâ pugnaverunt.* and *Sen. Ep.* 108. *Quantum majori impetu ad philoſophiam juvenis acceſſerim*, *quàm.* Indeed maſculine and neuter anciently were both of one Termination in the Nominative, whence *Priſcian l.* 7. cites *Senatuſconſultum prior*; and *bellum poſterior* and from the Ancients. *E* is the more uſual Termination, eſpecially in the maſ. and fem. Gender; unleſs in Poets.

Of the Nom. and Accuſ. Plural of the Third Declenſion in the Maſ. and Fem. Gender.

Of the *Nominative* and *Accuſative Plural* of the Third Declenſion in *the Maſculine and Feminine Gender* the ending is regularly and uſually in *es*, as *Lapides*.

Anciently they did uſe a Termination in *eis*, as *omneis*, *ſardeis*, which again they contracted into into *is*, as *omnis* & *Sardis*. Hence *Cic. de Opt. Gen. Orat. Qualeis Aſia multos tulit.* ib. *Vireis*, *Lacertos*, *ſanguinem quærunt. Plaut. Amph.* 5. 1. *Facit recta in anguis impetum.* & *Epid.* 2. 2. *Ipſum ante aïs conſpicor.* ib. 3. 4. *Promerui ut mihi omnes mortales deceat agere gratias.* Touching which it is exceeding difficult and operous, if poſſible, to give certain rules; Authors following rather the judgement of the ſound by their ear, then any rule. See *Gel. l.* 13. *c.* 19. yet *Priſcian* attempts it, and gives four Canons, repeated by *Voſſius* and *Daneſ.* viz. that they end in *is*, (1) whoſe Genitive is like their Nom. as *naris omnis.* (2) which are only plurals as *manes*, *tres.* (3) whoſe Nom. Singu. ends in *er*, and Abla-

Abl. in *i*, *acer*, *imber*, (4) which end in *ns*, or *rs*, as *mons*, *pars*. See *Voſſ.* de *Analog. l.* 2. *c.* 10. *Daneſ. Schol. p.* 55. Let the particular words be well marked, as they are met with. Such as *ardenteis*. Cic. *aureis* id. *forenſeis*, id. *qualeis*. id *tereteis*, id. *treis*, Virg. *Vireis*. Cic. &c. *Acris*. Virg. *adis*. Plaut, *anguis*, id. *bidentis*; Virg. *celeris* Vir. *Compluris*, Perſ. *Decembris*, Hor. *dulcis*, Virg. *fontis*, id. *imbris*, id. *litis*. Cic. *manis*, Virg. *mortalis*. Plaut. *omnis*, Salluſt. *parentis*, Ter. *Partis*, Virg. *pluris*, Hor. *Salubris*, Virg. *Summatis*, Plaut. *tenacis*, id. *tris*, id. *urbis*, id. &c.

Of the Nom. and Accuſ. Plural of the Third Declenſion in the Neuter Gender.

Of the *Nominative*, and ſo of the *Accuſative* caſe *Plural* of the *Third Declenſion*, in the Neuter Gender, the ending ſometimes is *a*, and ſometimes in *ia*.

In *a* they end, whoſe Ablat. ſing. ends only in *e*, as *capita*, *a capite*; *onera ab onere*; *gauſapa a gauſape*, ſo *hoſpita*, *ſoſpita*, *paupera*, of *hoſpite*, *ſoſpite*, *paupere*.

In *ia* they end, whoſe Ablat. ſing. ends only in *i*, as *animalia*, of *animali*; *fortia* of *forti*; or elſe in *e* and *i* as *felicia* of *felice vel felici*; ſo *locupletia*, *divitia* from *locuplete vel locupleti*, *divite vel diviti*.

Yet from this there be ſome Exceptions.

(1) *Vetus* makes *vetera*, and *uber ubera*.

(2) *Bicorpor*, *tricorpor*, *unicolor*, *verſicolor*, have *i* in the Abl. ſing. yet only *a* in the Nom. plur. which Termination comes from a Termination in *us* in the Nom. ſing. *bicorporus*, *verſicolorus*, &c.

(3) Comparatives, as *majora*, *minora*, the ablative of theſe in *e* being the more uſual, yet *plus* hath *plura* and *pluria*, and thence are *compluria* & *compluria*.

Apluſtre, whoſe Ablative is *apluſtri*, is alſo ſaid to have both *apluſtra*, and *apluſtria*; but *apluſtra* comes not of *apluſtre*, but of *apluſtrum* anciently uſed. See *Voſſ. de Analog. l.* 2. *c.* 13. *Daneſ Schol. p.* 52.

Of the *Genitive caſe Plural of the Third Declenſion*

ſion the ending generally in *um*, as *Lapidum*, &c.

Yet in *ium*, there are ſundry words and kinds of words that do end.

Firſt ſuch as have their Ablative Sing. ending in *i* to which may be referred thoſe, that have both *e* and *i* in the Abl. ſing. as *turris*, *turri turrium*; *animal*, *animali*, *animalium*; *fortis* & *forte*, *forti*, *fortium*; *felix*, *felice vel feliei*, *felicium*; *imber*, *imbre & imbri*, *imbrium*; *prudens*, *prudente*, *& prudenti prudentium*; *concors*, *concorde*, *concordi*, *concordium*. So Gentiles in *as*, as *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Capenas*; *noſtras*, *veſtras*; and like them *optimas*, and *ſummas*, which from an old Nominat. in *tis*, form an Ablat in *ti*, and thence a Genitive plural in *tium*, *Arpinatium*; *noſtratium*; *optimatium*, &c.

Yet from this Rule are excepted as ending in *um*.

(1) All Comparatives, whoſe Gen. Plur. ends in *um*; as *major* & *majus*, *majorum*. Except *plus*, *plurium*, , and *compluria*, *complurium*, , before which yet *Pliny* preferreth *complurum* (as *Voſsius* ſaith from *Chariſius*) againſt the uſe of the Ancients.

(2) Words ending in *fex* compounded of *facio*; which when taken Adjectively have their Ablat. in *e* and *i* yet their Gen. Plur. only in *um*: as *Artifex*, *opifex* (and ſo *carnifex*) *artificum* &c. Probably, that their Gen. caſes might not be confounded with *Artificium* &c. Subſtantives ſingular of the neuter Gender.

(3) Theſe Particular words.

Memor, *immemor*, *inops*, *uber*,
Compos, *impos*, *impuber*, *puber*,
Dives, *degener*, *congener*, *bicorpor*,

Vetus,

Vetus, ſtrigilis, mugilis, tricorpor.

Vigilum is of *vigil* the Subſtantive whoſe Ablative ſingular is *vigile*, of *vigili* the Ablative of *vigil* the Adjective is rather formed *vigilium*. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 14. p. 312.

Secondly words of two or more Syllables ending with two conſonants as *cohors, cohortium*; *parens parentium* (read in *Horat.* l. 3. od. 24. *Dos eſt magna parentium virtus*) and many Adjectives uſed Subſtantively, *ſerpens ſerpentium*; *bidens, bidentium*; ſo *infans adoleſcens, rudens, torrens*, which Subſtantively taken have their Ablative in *e*.

Yet from this Rule are excepted as ending in *um*.

(1) Theſe particular words, *cœlebs, conſors, hyems, judex, ſenex*.

(2) Words derived of *capio, auceps, forceps, manceps, municeps, particeps, Princeps* (of which yet *Juſtin.* l. 1. formeth *Principium*) In the moſt the reaſon may be to diſtinguiſh them from Subſtantives ſingular ending in *ium*, as *aucupium mancipium*, &c.

(3) Greek words ending in ας in Greek, and in *um* in Latine; as *Arabs, Æthiops, Chalybs, Cyclops, phalanx*: to which add theſe monyſyllables, *gryps, lynx, ſphinx*,

Thirdly, Nouns ending in *er, es* and *is*, not encreaſing in the Genitive caſe: as *venter ventrium* (*Piſces attritu ventrium coeunt. Plin.* l. 9. c. 20.) *nubes nubium: piſces piſcium*. So Greek words of the Second Declenſion of the Contracts. *Syrtis, Syrtis, Syrtium*; *diœceſis, diœceſis, diœceſium*. Hither refer *caro, carnium*; there having been anciently *hæc carnis, hujus carnis*.

Yet from this Rule are excepted, *juvenis, juvenum, canis canum*; and *panis, panum*; if it be read in the Plural number in that caſe. Fourth-

Fourtly ſundry words of more Syllables than one, increaſing in the Genitive caſe; viz. *Civitas, utilitas, hæreditas*, whereof is read *civitatium* in *Juſtin. l.* 9. *Utilitatium in Liv. l.* 45. *hæreditatium* in the *Pandects*. Notwithſtanding the Syncopated Termination in *um*, is in theſe much the more uſual.

So *Samnis* and *Quiris*, whereof is read *Samnitium. Liv. l.* 7. *Quiritium. Hor. Carm. l.* 1. *od.* 1. whoſe Nominative ſingular was formerly *Samnitis*, and *Quiritis*: ſo that theſe may be reduced to the third Rule.

And *Palus* and *fornax* whereof is read *paludium* in *Columel. l.* 3. *c.* 9. and *fornacium Plin. l.* 35. *c.* 14. Though *paludum* is alſo read in *Mela. l.* 3. *c.* 3. and *fornacum* in *Plin. l.* 34. *c.* 10.

Fifthly ſome words only plurals: as *manes, manium*; *penates penatium*; To which may be added *ſales, ſalium, vires, virium* (whoſe Nominative ſingular *vis* is of *viris* by a *Syncope* and a *Craſis*) *tres, trium* from the Greek word τριῶν *fores, forium* of *foris*; to which *Daneſ.* adds *mœnia, mœnium. Schol. p.* 53.

On the other ſide *opes, primores, lemures, cœlites, Celeres, Luceres, proceres* (which three laſt come of *Celer, Lucer, Procer*) have *um*.

Sixthly ſeveral ſorts of words of one Syllable.

(1) Such Latine words in *x* as have a conſonant before *x*: *arx, calx, falx, lanx, merx*.

(2) Some that have a vowel before *x*: as *crux* (whereof *crucium* is read in *Tertullian*) *faux* (whereof *faucium* is read in *Plin. l.* 21. *c.* 21.) *nix, nox, trux*, whoſe Ablative ſingular ends in *i*.

The reſt make *um*, as *grex, lex, rex, ſtrix, vox, dux, nux*, whereof *nucum* is read in *Plin. l.* 15. *c.* 22.

So

So of *prex* is *precum*; and of *frux frugum*. Of *pax, fax, fex, pix, lux* there is hardly read any Genitive plural. Alſo theſe words in *x* which are originally Greek; as *Phryx, Thrax*.

(3) Some that end in a Liquid conſonant; *viz. par, parium* as coming from *paris*; and thence *impar imparium*. So *Lar, Larium*: and *cor cordium*.

The reſt end in *um*, as *ren renum*; *ſplen ſplenum*; *fur furum*. *Mel, fel*, and *ſol* have no Genitive plural.

(4) Some that end in *s*: as *As aſſium*; *mas marium*; *vas vadis vadium*; *bes, beſſium*; *lis, litium*; *glis glirium*; *dis ditium*; *vis virium*; *cos cotium*; *dos dotium*; *os oſſis oſſium* (and, by analogy *os oris orium*, if it were to be uſed) and *mus murium*.

The reſt have *um*, viz. *pes pedum* (whence *bipes bipedum* &c.) *præs prædum*; *mos morum*; *flos florum*; *thus thurum*; *crus crurum*; and (*pus purum*, ſaith Mr. *Farnabie*) *ſus ſuum, grus gruum*; *laus laudum*; *fraus fraudum*; *bos boum* by a *ſyncope* for *bovium*. Of *jus Cato* hath *jurum*; *Plautus jurium*, of which, *utrunque inſolens*, ſaith *Voſſius*. If *æs* and *rus* were to form a Genitive plural, it ſhould be *ærum*, and *rurum*, then *ærium*, and *rurium*.

1 Note many words in *ium* are found by a *Syncope* to have a Termination in *um*. *Optimatûm* uſed by *Corn. Nepos*. *Summatûm* by *Plaut*. *Sontûm* by *Stat. agreſtûm, cæleſtum* by *Virg. Volucrûm*, by *Plin. cædûm*, by *Silius. ſedûm* by *Cic. menſûm* by *Paul. J. C. paludûm* by *Mela. fornacûm* by *Plin. forûm* for *forium* by *Plaut. Larûm* for *Larium* by *Varr. Oſſûm* for *oſſium*, by *Apul. Murûm* for *murium* by *Cic. Civitatûm, utilitatûm, hæreditatûm*, are ordi-

nary. So are the Syncopated caſes of Participles, ſuch as *cadentûm, faventûm, furentûm, loquentûm, manentûm, natantûm, potentûm, precantûm, regnantûm, rudentûm, ſequentûm, ſilentûm, venientûm*, all in *Virgil*, and the like in others; and like theſe *parentum, quadrupedantum.*

2. Note. Many words have in the Genitive plural one Termination in *ium*, and another in *orum*: as the names of Feaſts, *Floralia Floralium* and *Floraliorum*; *Agonalia, Agonalium*, and *Agonaliorum*; *Saturnalia Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliorum* &c. Of theſe the Termination in *um*, is formed from a Nom. caſe ſing. in *e*. v. q. *Florale* &c. that in *orum* is formed from a Nom. ſing. in *ium*. v. 9. *Floralium.*

Feſtum floriale is in *Ovid. Faſt. l.* 4. *in fine.*

The like may be ſaid of *alvearium* and *alveariorum*; the firſt from *alvear* & *alveare*, the ſecond from *alvearium*; ſo of *Exemplarium* from *exemplar*; and *exemplariorum* from *exemplarium* turned by *Ignatius Ep. ad Trall*, into ἐξεμπλαρίων. So of *vectigalium* and *vectigaliorum*; *ancilium* and *anciliorum*; *ſponſalium* and *ſponſaliorum*; *viridium* and *viridiorum*; *conclavium* and *conclaviorum*, it may be ſaid the ſeveral Terminations in the Genitive Plural are formed from ſeveral Terminations in the Nominative ſingular. It being not unuſual for words to have ſuch variety of Terminations, *Milliare* and *Milliarium* are both in *Cic. torcular* and *torcularium* in *Cato*; as alſo *lupanar* and *lupanarium*. So *A. Gell.* hath *vulgaris* and *vulgarius*; *Turpilius* hath both *ſingularis* and *ſingularius* as *Voſſius* from *Nonius* tells us.

So again Greek words in *ma* have two Genitives one in *um*, from the Nominative ſingular in *ma*, of the Greek Termination: and one in *orum*, from a Nominative ſingular in *um*, of a Latine Termination: as *Poematum* from *hoc poema*, and *poematorum*

poematorum from *hoc poematum*, &c.

Sometimes Greek words have their Greek Termination written in Latine letters, as *Hæreseôn*, *Epigrammatôn*, *Metamorphoseôn*.

Of the Dative Case plural of the Third Declension.

The regular Termination of this Case is *ibus*; by which it is distinguished from the Dative plural of the Fifth, which is *ebus*; and from the Fourth, which though it hath *ibus* (as being derived from this Declension) yet it hath not *ibus* only, as this hath. *Bus*, which is ordinarily given for the Termination of this case, is common to all the three Declensions; and to those also of the First that end in *abus*; *abus ebus*, *ibus*, *ubus*, all end in *bus*.

Bobus, and *bubus*, which differ from this Termination are contracted of *bovibus*. *Voss. de Arte Gram. l.* 2. *c.* 15. So *Subus* is said for *suibus* which *Cic.* hath *l.* 5. *de Fin.*

Quinquatriis is from *quinquatria quinquatriorum*: *Quinquatribus* from *quinquatria*, *quinquatrium*; or from *quinquatrus*, as *fructibus* from *fructus*.

Neuter Greek words in *ma*, besides their Dative in *ibus*, have another in *is*, but that is formed from a Nominative in *um*. e. g. *Poematis* from *hoc poematum*, as *poematibus* from *hoc poema*; and so in the rest. Not to note, that these kind of words have a formation of the first Declension, whence we read of *Diademam dedit*, in *Pomponius*; *Cum servili schemâ*, in *Plaut.* and *exemplar impetratæ schemæ*, in *Sueton.* of which way of forming, those Terminations in *is*, may be the Remains. See *Danes. Schol. l.* 1. *c.* 13.

Sometimes amongst the Ancients there is met

with a Dative of a Greek Termination in *ſin* (i.e. *σι* with *ν* added to it) as in *Dryaſin, Hamadryaſin, Etheſin, Schemaſin.* But theſe are rare, to be obſerved, not followed.)

Of the Genitive Singular of the Fourth Declenſion.

The Termination of this Caſe is regularly *us*, as *manûs.*

Some words now of this Declenſion anciently were alſo of the Second Declenſion, and of them remains a Gen. caſe in *i*. Hence *Ter. Eun.* 2. 2. *Quid iſtuc inquam ornati eſt?* and *Phor.* 1. 3. *Ubi ejus adventi venit in mentem,* and *Adelph* 5. 4. *Hoc fructi pro labore ab his fero.* & *And* 2. 2. *In ædibus nihil ornati, nihil tumulti.* Of the ſame ſtamp are *geli, quæſti, victi, eſti, ſenati, ſumti, exerciti, aſpecti, lucti, ſalti, parti, gemiti, flucti, piſcati, ſtrepiti, porti, ſoni,* cited by *Voſſius* from *Nonius.*

Again, ſome were of the Third Declenſ, and of them remains a Gen. in *is*. Hence *Ter. He.* 2. 3. *Ejus anuis causâ opinor, quæ erat mortua.* Of the ſame ſtamp are *Senatûis,* for *ſenatus, domuis* for *domus, fluctuis* for *fluctus,* which *A. Gell.* ſaith, M. *Varro,* and P. *Nigidius* learned Romans did uſe, *Noct. Att. l.* 4. *c.* 16. So alſo *rituis* for *ritus, fructuis* for *fructus, victuis* for *victus, graduis* for *gradus,* which *Voſſius* citeth from their Authors *de Analog. l.* 2. *c.* 17. See alſo *Daneſ. Schol. l.* 1. *c.* 19.

Of the Gen. in *uis* is made the regular Gen. in *us* by a *Craſis,* whence the Termination is long.

Of the Dative Caſe ſingular of the fourth Declenſion.

The Termination of this caſe is regularly in *ui,* as *manui.* Yet, by an *Apocope,* from many Datives of this Declen. *i* is cut off, and for *ui* is read *u.* So *Ter. Ad.* 1. 1. *Veſtitu nimio indulges. Virg. Æn.* 1. *Parce metu*

metu Cytheræa. Cæsar in Dolab. act. 3 In ædibus fanisque positu & honori erant & ornatu. Tacit. Annal. 14. Cruciatu aut præmio cuncta pervia esse, yea *quibus subito impetu, ac latrocinio parricidarum resistat*, is *Cicero's* saith *Voss.* Of the same stamp is *victu, concubitu adspectu* for *victui, concubitui, adspectui*, in *Virg. exercitu* for *exercitui*, in *Varro*; *cursu* for *cursui*, in *Veget. anu* & *victu* for *anui* & *victui* in *Lucilius*; *usu* for *usui*, in *Lucret. dominatu* for *dominatui*, in *Cæs. luxu* for *luxui* in *Salust.* & *Tacit. venatu* for *venatui*, in *Virg. quæstu* and *cultu*, for *quæstui* and *cultui*, in *Plaut. delectu* for *delectui* in *Liv.* See *Schrevel.* in *Ter. Ad.* 1. 1. *Farnab. Gram. p.* 14. *Alvar. Instit. Gram p.* 217. *A. Gell. l.* 4. *c.* 16. *Voss. de Analog. l.* 2. *c.* 18.

Of the Ablat. Sing. of the Fourth Declension.

The Ablative Singular of this Declension endeth in *u*. And *impetû* is not, as some would have it, the Ablat. of *impetus*; but of *impes*, whose Gen. *impetis* is in *Lucret.*

Of the Genitive Plur. of the Fourth Declension.

The Genitive plural of the fourth Declension is *uum*, of which by a Syncope is made *um*, in *currûm* for *curruum*, *Virg. Æn.* 6. *nurûm* for *nuruum*. Virg. *Æn.* 12. *passûm* for *passuum* Mart. l. 2. ep. 5.

Of the Dative plural of the Fourth Declension.

The Dative plural of the Fourth Declension most usually is *ibus*.

Yet some end in *ubus*, as *specus, lacus, artus, tribus, arcus, partus*, which last is in that termination in *Hor.* 5. *Epod. Per liberos te, si vocata partubus*; as *lacus* in *Ovid.* 4. *Fast. Præmia de lacubus proxima musta tuis*; and *artus* in *Virg. Ep. de livore. Et totum bibit artubus cruorem.*

Some add *acubus, quercubus, ficubus*, which *Alvarus* thinks no where to be found; no nor *acibus, quercibus, ficibus*; for the last of which *ficis* of the second Declens. is in use; and *præplacet Plinio* as Mr. *Farnabie* saith, *System. Gram.* p. 15.

Some are read in both Terminat. as *quæstus, quæstibus*, & *quæstubus; genu genibus, & genubus*, read in *Ovid* & *Seneca*; *portus portibus*, & *portubus*, both in *Cæs. de*

de bel.Civ. where yet saith *Voss.* for *portibus* the manuscripts read *portubus*; *veru veribus*, (read in *Virg.* 1 *Æn. Pars in frustra secant veribusque trementia figunt*) and *verubus*, read *in Ovid* 6. *Met. Pars verubus stridet.* See *Danes. Schol. l.* 1, *c.* 14.

Of the Gen. case sing. of the Fifth Declension.

The Termination of this Case is regularly in *ei*, as *diei*. Anciently there were other terminations of it.

Sometimes the Termination of the Genitive was the same with that of the Nominative viz. *es* as in Parasyllabicall Nouns in *is* of the Third Declension from whence probably this Declension was formed. Hence that of *Cic. pro Sextio* relating the words *Consulis* ἀρχαίζοντος as *H. Stephanus* thinks, *Equites verò daturos illius dies pœnas.* so *Lucret. l.* 4. — *Rabies unde illæ hæc germina surgunt.*

Sometimes they did contract ēi first into *ei*, and then into *i*; as *Ulyssēi* of *Ulysseus* is first contracted into *Ulyssēi* (*trisyllab.*) and then into *Ulyssi.* Hence that of *Virg.* 1 *Æn.* as some read it, *Munera lætitiamque dii.* and that of *Corn. Nepos Quæ quidem res & illis contemnentibus pernicii, & huic despecto saluti fuit.* And so the rest which are read in the same termination in ancient Authors, and Manuscripts, *progenii, acii, luxurii, specii, fidi, famii,* for *famei* of *fames*, sometimes of the Fifth Declension. See *A. Gell. l.* 9. *c.* 14.

Lastly, sometimes they did by an *Apocope* cut of *i* from *ei*, in the Genitive case. Hence that of *Salust. Vix decimâ parte die reliquâ*; and *dubitavit acie pars*; and *Et jam die vesper erat*; and *At inde nullâ munitionis aut requie morâ processit ad oppidum.* And that of *Auson. Carm. de Rosa. Ad primos radios interitura die,* And that of *Ovid.*
Met. 3. **Prima fide vocisque ratæ tentamina sumpsit.* and *l.* 7. *Meditataque pene reliqui Tentamenta fide. ib.* v. 7. 42.

v.7.42. Cui non iſta fide ſatis experientia ſano Magna foret ſatis? and *l. 6. Utque fide pignus dextras utraſque poposcit.*

And by the ſame *Apocope* the Dative which regularly ends in *ēi* is found to end in *e*. Hence *Lucil. l. 1. Ætati facieque tuæ, Hor. l. 1. Sat. 3. Prodiderit commiſsa fide.* And this Dative in *e* was uſed by thoſe, *qui puriſsimè locuti ſunt*, ſaith *A. Gell. Noct. Att. l. 9, c. 14.* See *Daneſ. Schol. p. 62. Voſſ. de Analog. lib. 2. c. 19.*

CHAP. II.

Of the Comparing of Adjectives.

After the Learner is perfected in the formings of Nouns Subſtantives, then let him be made skillfull in the forming of *Regular Compariſons* of Adjectives; ſo as that hearing one Poſitive Degree of any compared Adjective, he can inſtantly forme thereof a Comparative and a Superlative in any caſe, gender or number: as *Doctus, doctior, doctiſsimus. Docta doctior, doctiſsima. Doctum doctius, doctiſsimum*, &c.

That he may doe this with greateſt eaſe, and readineſs, (having firſt taught him to decline the Poſitive alone, ſo as that he can either decline it in both numbers through all Terminations; viz. *Doctus, docta, doctum*; *Docti, doctæ, docti*, &c. or (which is the harder work) in one ſingular Termination, viz. *doctus, docti, docto*, &c. *docta, doctæ, doctæ* &c. *doctum, docti, docto*, &c.) practiſe him firſt to decline onely the Comparative together with the Poſitive according to the ſeveral Terminations of it; thus, N. *Doctus doctior*; G. *docti, doctioris*;

D. *docto, doctiori,* &c. N. *Docta doctior.* G. *doctæ doctæ, oris,* D. *doctæ doctiori* &c. N. *Doctum doctius*; Gen. *Docti, doctioris.* Dat. *docto, doctiori,* &c. then all the three degrees together, first in the masculine, then in the feminine, and so in the neuter Gender throughout all Cases of both Numbers; thus *Doctus, doctior, doctissimus. Docti, doctiorum, doctissimi,* &c. *Docta, doctior, doctissima. Doctæ, doctiori, doctissimæ,* &c. *Doctum, doctius, doctissimum. Docti doctiorum, doctissimi,* &c. and last of all, all the three Degrees together in all cases of both numbers, and through all the genders of every case together; thus N. *Doctus doctior doctissimus, Docta, doctior, doctissima, Doctum, doctius, doctissimum.* G *Docti, doctiorum, doctissimi; doctæ, doctiorum, doctissimæ; docti, doctiorum, doctissimi,* &c. And so let him go on to do Adjectives of other Terminations, as *tener, felix, prudens, vetus,* &c.

When the Schollar hath attained to a competent readiness in the forming of *Regular* and *Perfect Comparisons*, let him then proceed to, and be made acquainted with those Comparisons that are *Irregular*, and *Defective* or *Redundant*. Touching which, because it may be Useful both to Teachers, and Learners, I will here set down such a Collection of Rules and Observations, as I gathered for my private use beginning first with the Irregular Comparisons

Of Irregular Comparisons.

Irregular Comparison is, when Degrees are formed not according to Rule.

1. Positives in *er*, forme a superlative Degree, by assuming unto them *rimus*, as *Pulcher, pulcherrimus.*

2. These three *facilis, similis,* and *humilis,* forme their Superlative by changing *is*, into *limus*, ; as *facilis, facillimus*; *similis, simillimus*; *humilis, humil-*

millimus. So the compounds of *facilis*, and *similis*; *difficilis*, *difficillimus*; *dissimilis*, *dissimillimus.* Of *imbecillis* is formed *imbecillimus*; though there be also *imbecilliſsimus* of *imbecillus*.

3. Adjectives derived of *dico*, *loquor*, *volo*, *facio*, form their Comparative and Superlative degrees as of Positives in *ens*, as *Maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentiſsimus*. *Magniloquus*, *magniloquentior*, *magniloquentiſsimus*. *Benevolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentiſsimus*. *Magnificus*, *magnificentior*, *magnificentiſsimus*. But *mirificus* hath *mirificiſsimus*.

4. Adjectives ending in *us* pure, form a Periphraſtical Comparative and Superlative, by adding *magis* or *maxime*, and *minus* or *minime*, to their Positive degree, as *Pius*; *magis pius*; *maxime pius*. *Aſsiduus*; *magis aſsiduus*; *maxime aſsiduus*. *Idoneus*; *minus idoneus*; *minimè Idoneus*. *Reus*; *minus reus*; *minime reus*.

Note other Adjectives are in Authors compared according to this Periphraſtical way: but theſe Adjectives are not ordinarily compared any other way.

Yet, though it be not ordinary; there may be found Comparatives and Superlatives regularly formed of this ſort of Adjectives: as *Idoneior* of *idoneus*. *Arduior* of *arduus*. *Innoxior* of *innoxius*. *Induſtrior* of *induſtrius*. So *Egregiiſsimus* of *egregius*. *Perpetuiſsimus* of *perpetuus*. *Exiguiſsimus* of *exiguus*. *Vacuiſsimus* of *vacuus*. Alſo *Strenuior* and *ſtrenuiſsimus* of *ſtrenuus*. *Aſsiduior* and *aſsiduiſsimus* of *aſsiduus*. *Piiſsimus* of *pius*, which are not but with great warineſs to be uſed. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. Cap. 27.

5. Theſe ſingular words are alſo irregularly compared:

Bonus, *melior*, *optimus*,

Parvus

Malus,	*pejor,*	*peſsimus,*
Magnus,	*major,*	*maximus,*
Parvus,	*minor,*	*minimus,*
Multus,	*plus,*	*plurimus,*
Multa		*plurima,*
Multum,		*plurimum,*
Vetus,	*veterior,*	*veterrimus,* of *vetus.*
*citer,**	*citerior,*	*citimus,*
inferus,	*inferior*	*ſimus,* & *imus*
Exterus, & *Exter,*	*exterior*	*Extremus,* & *extimus,*
ſuperus,	*ſuperior,*	*ſupremus,* & *ſummus,*
poſterus,	*poſterior,*	*poſtremus,* & *poſtumus*
nequam,	*nequior,*	*nequiſsimus.*

* *Voſsius* ſaith *Cato* uſed it: but that now it is almoſt grown abſolite.

And thus far of *Compariſons Irregular.* Now follow *Compariſons Defective.*

Of Defective Compariſons.

Defective Compariſon, is, when any one of the three Degrees is wanting.

Theſe want the *Poſitive Degree.*

Prior primus; from the obſolete *pris.*
Ocior, ociſsimus; from ὠκὺς ὠκύτατος
Potior, potiſsimus
Deterior, Deterrimus } from *potis, deter, ulter,*
Ulterior, ultimus } grown out of uſe.
Penitior, penitiſsimus
Interior; *intimus*; from *inter*
Propior, proximus; from *propis*; or *propus.*
Diutior diutiſsimus; Of which word yet *Voſſius* ſaith he remembers not that he ever read it.

Theſe want the *Comparative Degree.*

Apricus apriciſsimus	*Meritus meritiſsimus*
Bellus, belliſsimus	*Novus, noviſsimus*
Conſultus, conſultiſsimus	*Nuperus, nuperrimus*

Diverſu

Diverſus, diverſiſsimus. *Perſuaſus, Perſuaſiſtimus*
Falſus, falſiſsimus. *Sacer, ſacerrimus.* ¶ Yet
Fidus, fidiſsimus. there may be found in
Inclytus, inclytiſsmus. *Gellius* both *novius*, and
Invitus, invitiſsimus. *diverſius*, and our *Dunæus* in his *Prælect.* ad *Lyſiam* hath *bellius* an Adverb.

Hither may be referred theſe Nouns of which there are Superlatives read, which yet I do not recommend to be uſed, *Excluſus, Excluſiſſimus, Occluſus, occluſiſſimus.* (Plaut. Ciſt. 1. 1.) *par, pariſſimus*; and alſo theſe *Pronouns tuus, tuiſſimus*; *ipſe ipſiſſimus*, uſed by *Plaut.* in *Trin.* in imitation of *Ariſtophanes*, ſaying αὐτότατος from αὐτός.

Theſe want the *Superlative Degree.*

Adoleſcens, adoleſcentior, *Infinitus infinitior.*
Communis, communior. *Juvenis, junior.*
Dives, divitior *Longinquus, longinquior*
Declivis, declivior, *Opimus, opimior.*
Dexter, dexterior, * *Proclivis, proclivior.*
Grandis, grandior, *Propinquus propinquior.*
Ingens, ingentior. *Remiſſus, remiſsior.*
Salutaris, ſalutarior. *Satur, ſaturior.*
Siniſter, ſiniſterior. *Senex, ſenior.*
Supinus ſupinior *Taciturnus, taciturnior.*

¶ Yet *Plaut. Curc.* 1. 1. hath *taciturniſsimus.*

* *Dextimus* and *Siniſtimus* ſignifie no more, than *Dexter* & *ſiniſter.* See *Alvar.*

Theſe want both the *Poſitive* and the *Superlative Degrees.*

Viz. *Satior, anterior, licentior, ſequior.* Whither may be referred, *Pœnior, Neronior, Cinædior*, of which is there is no Superlative read, ſo no poſitive, but Noon Subſtantive, viz. *Pœnus, Nero, Cinædus.*

Some

Some want both *Positive* and *Comparative*; as *Patruissimus* and *Plautinissimus*, &c. which are not mutable.

And thus far of *Comparison Defective*, now follows *Comparison Redundant.*

Of *Redundant Comparisons.*

Redundant Comparison is, when any one degree hath various formations, which happens mostly in the Superlative degree.

Sometimes there are *two Superlatives* of one Positive, as *Extremus* and *extimus* of *exterus*. *Infimus* and *imus* of *Inferus*. *Maturissimus* and *maturrimus* of *maturus*, See *Voss. de Analog. l.* 2. *c.* 25. *Piissimus* and *Pientissimus* of *pius*. *Postremus* and *postumus* of *posterus*. *Supremus* and *summus* of *Superus*.

Sometimes of a Superlative Degree there is formed a new *Comparative* or *Superlative*: as *Proximior* of *proximus*. *Extremius* and *extremissimus* * of *extremus*. *Minimissimus* *of *minimus* *Postremius* and *postremissimus* of *postremus*. *Pessimissimus* of *pessimus*.

In these, whereof there are Examples in *Voss. de Analog. l.* 2. *c.* 26. some later *Latines* have imitated some *Greeks*. For in *Ephes.* 3. 8. we read ἐλαχιστότερος from ἐλάχιστος; and so in *Xenoph.* ἐσχατώτατος from ἔσχατος who yet are not without great witness to be followed therein,

After this Account of *Defective*, and *Redundant*, as well as *Irregular Comparisons*, it may perhaps not be ungrateful to the learning Reader to have some account of *Adjectives* that are *not compared at all*, unless Periphrastically by *magis* and *maxime*, or *minus* and *minime*.

Adjectives not compared are

Cicur, claudus, canus, calvus,

Degener

*Extremissimus *is used by* Lipsius *l.* 2. *de Cruce c.* 12. Minimissimus *by* Jan. Dousa Plautin. Explic. *l.* 3. *c.* 23.

Degener, dispar, almus, salvus
Egenus, memor, magnanimus, mirus,
Jejunus, crispus, unicus, delirus,
Canorus, balbus, opimus, vetulus
Sylvestris, mediocris, and *edentulus.* See *Voss. de Analog. l.* 2. *c.* 22.

Besides these particular words, there be many sorts of Adjectives, which Grammarians say are not compared.

1. Gentiles, as *Romanus, Græcus, Athenienſis*
2. Possessives, as *Fraternus, herilis, muliebris, castrensis.*
3. Numerals, as *septem, septimus, ternarius, tertianus.*
4. Diminutives, as *tenellus, tantillus, tantulus.*
5. Materialls, as *Aureus, æreus, lapideus, ligneus.*
6. Temporals, as *Matutinus, hesternus, biennis.*
7. Compounds of *fero* & *gero,* as *Salutifer, corniger.*
8. Words ending in the Terminations following.
   1. *bundus,* as *moribundus, cunctabundus.*
   2. *imus,* as *bimus, trimus, maritimus*
   3. *ivus,* as *deliberativus.*
   4. *plex,* as *duplex, triplex.*
   5. *ſter,* as *campeſter, ſylveſter.*

¶ Yet *Ramus* owns *festivior,* and *festiviſsimus* of *festivus,* and *simplicius* of *simplex,* which he saith *Quintilian* thought well of; And *Vossius* also excepts *multiplex. l.* 2. *de Anal. c.* 27. And others may find other Exceptions, which whether in this, or in any thing else, so they be upon good authority, I shall not gainsay.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the Forming of Verbs.

THE Scholar being Perfected in the forming of Nouns and comparing of Adjectives, the next thing that I would have him well grounded in, is *the Forming of Verbs*; in the performing of which work ſeveral Teachers have ſeveral ways. That which I practiced with no ill ſucceſs is as followeth.

Firſt, make the Scholar underſtand what *Tenſes* in all Moods are formed of the *Preſent tenſe*; and what of the *Preterperfect tenſe*: namely that of the *Preſent tenſe* of the Indicative Mood are formed the Preterimperfect, and Future tenſe of the ſame Mood; the Preſent and Preterimperfect tenſes of all other Moods; the Gerunds, and Participles of the Preſent tenſe and of the Future in *dus*. And of the *Preterperfect tenſe* of the Indicative Mood are formed the Preterpluperfect tenſe of the ſame Mood; The preterperfect; preterpluperfect, and Future tenſes of all other Moods; The Supines and Participles of the Preter tenſe, and Future in *rus*. As the Preſent tenſe Active. *Amo, amabam, amabo, ama, amato; amem, amarem, amare, amandi, amando, amandum, amans.* Preterperf. *Amavi, amaveram, amaverim, amaviſſem, amavero, amaviſſe, amaturum eſſe, amatum, amatu, amaturus.* So Preſ. Paſsive. *Amor, amabar, amabor; amare, amator, amerís, amareris, amari, amandus.* Preterperf. *Amatus ſum vel fui, amatus eram vel fueram, amatus ſim, vel fuerim, amatus eſſem, vel*

vel fuiſſem, amatus ero, vel fuero, amatum eſſe vel fuiſſe, amatum iri, vel amandum eſſe, amatus.

When the Learner knows in what order the Verbs is to be formed and what Tenſes each of other, then let him begin the Forming of it with the Latine before the Engliſh; and together with the Verb naming alſo the Nominative Caſe, of the Perſonal Pronoun, wherewith it agrees thus, *Ego, amo,* I love: *tu amas,* thou loveſt; *ille amat,* he loveth, *nos amamus,* we love; *vos amatis* ye love; *illi amant,* they love; and ſo throughout all Moods and Tenſes of the Active voice.

Then let him go over the Active Voice again in the ſame order, with the Latine ſtill before the Engliſh, but naming onely one Perſon of a Tenſe at a time, and then proceeding to the next: thus. *Ego amo* I love; *ego amabam,* I loved, or did love, &c.

When he hath in this order gone over all the Perſons of all the Examples of the four Conjugations, giving the Engliſh for the Latine, then let him in ſame order goe over them all again, onely giving now the Latine for the Engliſh, or ſetting the Engliſh before the Latine: thus, I love, *ego amo*; thou loveſt, *tu amas,* &c. and, I love, *ego amo*; I loved or did love, *ego amabam,* and ſo through all Moods and Tenſes, Numbers and Perſons. And let not this exerciſe be left off, till he be exact in it.

When the Active voice is gained, then proceed to the Paſsive, and let that be got in the ſame manner and order, firſt Latine before Engliſh, then Engliſh before Latine; firſt all the Perſons of each Tenſe; then one Perſon only

of

of a Tenſe at once; firſt the Preſent tenſe, and all that come of it, then the Preterperfect Tenſe, and all that come of it likewiſe.

And when the Paſsive Voice is alſo thus gained, then go again to work to the getting, of both Active and Paſsive together in the ſame manner and order, Latine before Engliſh, and Engliſh before Latine, beginning firſt with the Preſent tenſe and thoſe that come of it and going on to the Preterperfect tenſe and thoſe that come of that.

When the Scholar is perfect in doing thus all the four Examples of this Grammar, then put him to other Examples which he will within a while, readily do, and *extempore*, being made thus perfect in theſe.

It will be very uſeful, after this practice, to put other Subſtantives, beſides the Pronouns, before the Verbs, and form them together with the Verbs: thus *Ego pater amo*, &c. *Ego mater amor* &c. *Tu magiſter doces* &c. *Tu puella doceris*, &c. *Ille vir legit* &c. *Illa dictio legitur* &c. *Nos pueri audimus*; *Vos virgines ploratis*; *Illa regna perduntur*; or the like.

If the Teacher pleaſe, he may yet go on to put his Scholar to the adding of a caſual word after his Verb, chuſing ſometimes a Verb, that governeth an Accuſative, ſometimes one that governeth a Dative, and ſometimes one that governeth a Nominative after it,; a. *Ego amo te*; *Tu places mihi*; *Horatius ſalutatur Poeta*; *Virgilius legitur a me.*

How great will be the benefit of this exerciſe, is ſo viſible that I need not expatiate in the commendation of it. Briefly therein there is laid the main ground-work of the Latine Tongue. For in this exerciſe all the Three Concords are practically learned. That of the Nominative Caſe and the Verb, in the declining of the Verb with, his

his Personal Pronoun. That of the Substantive with the Substantive, in declining together with the Pronoun Substantive another Noun Substantive. *Ego pater amo.* And that of the Substantive and Adjective, in the declining of the Preterperfect tenses of the Verbs Passives with Nominative Cases of divers genders; *Ego pater amatus sum; tu mater amata es vel fuisti; illud regnum eversum est vel fuit,* &c. And I need not say how great an insight is given into the Government of Verbs, by adding a casual word to the Verb, accordingly as I have shewn.

This exercise need not be done continuedly, and altogether, but one part of it at once, and that every morning after the saying of the mornings part. And in about a quarter of a years time it will, if well followed, be well learned.

After the Schollar is grown exact in the forming of Verbs Perfect and Regular, then let him be thoroughly instructed in the Verbs Defective and Irregular. The Irregular Verbs are competently done already in the Accidence. Of that which Grammarians deliver touching *Verbs Defective* I shall here for the Use of the Learner, subjoyn this Collection with Notes upon it.

Of Verbs Defective.

Indicat. Pres. Sing. *Aio, ais, ait.* Plur. *aiunt,* Præterimperf. *aiebam, aiebas, aiebat; aiebamus, aiebatis, aiebant.* Imperat. *ai.* Potent. Pres. Sing. *aias, aiat.* Plur. *aiamus, aiant.* Particip. *aiens.*

¶ For *aiebant* the ancients said *aibant. Probus* owns in the Præterperf. *ai, aisti, ait.* And 'tis certain that in *Tertullian* is read *aierunt. Vossius* thinks the Ancients used yet more, such as *aitis,*

aire, and some others. (See *Voss. Etymolog. Lat. p.* 132. and *Analog. l.* 3. *p.* 140.

Ausim. Potent. Pres. & Preterperf. Sing. *Ausim, ausis, ausit.* Plur. *ausint.*

¶ *Ausim* is used for *audeam*, and *ausus sim.* It is made by a Syncope of *auserim* formed from *ausi*, which anciently was the Preterperf. of *audeo*, as well as *ausus sum*, which only is in use.

Salve. Indicat. Fut. *Salvebis.* Imperat. Sing. *Salve, salveto.* Plural. *salvete, salvetote.* Infinit. *salvere.*

¶ *Plautus* useth *Salveo*, but in the Person of a Rustick; and in that is not to be followed.

Ave. Imperat. Sing. *Ave, aveto*, Plur. *avete, avetote* Infinit. *avere.*

¶ *Ave* considered as a word of Salutation, is a Defective, according to what is here delivered of it: but *aveo* to covet or desire, hath more tenses.

Cedo. Imperat. Sing. *Cedo.* Plur. *cedite.*

¶ *Cedo* is used for *dic*, or *porrige. Nomen Mulieris cedo quod sit.* Ter. Heaut. 4. 2. *Puerum mihi cedo.* Ter. Hec. 4. 4. For *cedite* anciently was said *cette. Cette manus vestras.* Enn. in *Medea.*

Faxim. Potent. preterperf. *Faxim, faxis, faxit.* Plur. *Faxint.* Fut. *Faxo, faxis, faxit.* Plur. *faxint.*

¶ *Faxim* is made of *facerim*, for *fecerim*, saith *Vossius* and so *faxo* of *facero*, for *fecero*: for the Ancients did often retein the Vowel of the Present tense in the Preterperfect tense. Hence *cenuere* in *Salust.* for *cecinere.* Of the same nature and formation is *axim, adaxim*, and *axo.* There is read also *faximus*, and *faxitis* in the Plural Number: and *faxem* for *feciſſem*: saith *Voss.* (*de Analog. l.* 3. *c.* 41.) and *faxere* for *fa-*

cturum

cturum esse, saith Mr. *Shirly*. *Via ad Lat. Ling. p.* 99.

Potent. Preterimperf. Sing. *Forem, fores, foret.* Pl. *forent.* Infinit. *fore.* *Forem.*

¶ *Forem* is made by a Syncope of *fuerem*, and *fore* of *fuere* of the old verb *fuo*. There is also read in *Virgil. afforet*; in *Terence*, *confore*. *Vossius* in *Etymolog. Lat. p.* 133. names *deforem*.

Indicat. Pres. *Quæso.* Plur. *Quæsumus.* *Quæso.*

¶ In *Lucret.* there is read *quæsit*; in *Plaut. quæsere*; in *Apuleius quæsens*; in *Ennius*, *quæsendum*. See *Voss. de Analog. l.* 3. *c.* 41.

Indic. Pres. *Infit.* *Infit.*

¶ *Infit* comes of *infio* used by *Varro* as *Priscian* testifies *l.* 8. It signifies the same that *Incipit*, *Infit ibi postulare*. *Plaut. Aulul.* 2. 4. Hither may be referred *defit* for *deest*, *desunt*; *defiet*, *defiat*, *defieri*. Also *confit*, and *confieri*. *Aliis quia defit quod amant, ægrè est.* Ter. *Quæ crescente lunâ gliscunt, deficiente contrà lunâ desunt.* Gell. *Verùm quid ego dicam? hoc confit, quod volo.* Ter. *Nunc quâ ratione quod instat Confieri possit, paucis, adverte, docebo.* Virg.

Indic. Pres. *Inquam, inquis, inquit.* Plur. *Inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt.* Preterimperf. *inquiebat, inquiebant.* Preterperf. *inquisti.* Futur. *inquies, inquiet.* Imperat. *inque, inquito.* *Inquam.*

¶ Grammarians name more, but till what they name be confirmed by good authority, it may do well to forbear them. These here named, may be confirmed by authority. *Inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt, inquiebat, inquiebant, inquisti, inquies* and *inquiet* are read in *Cicero*; *inquimus.* in *Horace*; *inque* in *Terence*; *inquito* in *Plautus*. See *Voss. Etymolog. Lat. p* 133. and *de Analog. l.* 3. *c.* 40. *Inquibat* is in *Cicero's Topicks* unless it be a misprint.

Vale. Indic. Fut. *Valebis.* Imperat. *vale*, *valeto*; *valete*, *valetote.* Infin. *valere.*

¶ *Valeo*, to be ſtrong or able, is a perfect Verb; but *valebis*, being a form of *valediction*, or bidding adiew or farewel is a verb defective.

Apage. Imperat. *Apage*, Plural *apagite.*

¶ *Voſsius* deriveth *apage* and *apagite* from the Greek ἄπαγε and ἀπάγεσθε of ἀπάγω to drive away. *Apage* is read in *Plaut.* *apagite* in *Cic.*

Ovat. Indic. Preſ. *Ovat.* Particip. *Ovans.*

¶ Mr. *Shirly* adds *Ovarent*, and *ovandi*; his autority he names not. From a Supine of this Verb *Voſsius* derives the Verbals *Ovatus*, and *Ovatio.*

Explicit. Indic. Preſ. *Explicit.* Plur. *expliciunt.* *Shirly Gram. Lat. p.* 39.

¶ *Explicit* ſignifies the ſame with *deſinit.*

Scio. *Scio* in the Imperative mood hath not *ſci.*

Soleo. *Soleo* in the Future tenſe hath not *ſolebo.*

Furo. *Furo* hath not in the Imperative mood *fure.*

Daris. *Fari s.* Neither *dor* nor *for* are read in the Indicative mood; nor *Der* and *fer* in the Subjunctive mood; yet *daris* and *faris*, &c. are uſed. *Diomedes* owns *effor. Fans* is in *Plaut. Perſ.* 2. 1. *Tu meum ingenium fans non didiciſti, atque infans.*

Odi, Cœpi. Memin. Theſe three *odi*, *cœpi*, *memini* want the Tenſes formed of the Preſent tenſe: but have thoſe that come of the Preterperfect tenſe, as *odi*, *odiſti*, *odit*, &c. *oderam*, *oderim*, *odiſſem*, *odero*, *odiſſe.* Part. *oſurus.* So *cœpi*, *cœperim*, *cœpiſſem*, *cœpero*, *cœpiſſe.* Sup. *cœptum*, *cœptu*, Particip. *cœpturus.* So *Memini*, *memineram*, *meminerim*, *meminiſſem*, *meminero*, *meminiſſe.*

¶ Theſe Verbs in the Preterperfect tenſe have the ſignification of the Preſent tenſe; and in the future tenſe of the Potential mood have the ſignification of the Future tenſe of the Indi-

Indicative mood, *Odi* hath alſo *oſus ſum*, and *cœpi*, *cœptus ſum* in the Preterperfect tenſe. And *memini*, hath *memento*, and *mementote* in the Imperative mood. Anciently there was *odio*, whence were formed, *Odivi, odivit, odite, odiet, odient, odibunt, odientes, oditur, odiaris.* So alſo *cœpio*, whence *cœpiam, cœpiat, cœperet*, which are ſometimes read but are now diſuſed. It is ordinary to add to theſe *Novi*, becauſe this like the reſt hath in the Preterperfect tenſe the ſignification of the Preſent tenſe. But the Verb is a perfect Verb, formed of *noſco*. See *Voſſ. de Analog. l.* 3. *c.* 39. *Novi*

And thus farre of Forming of Verbs.

CHAP. IV.

Of Tranſlating Engliſh into Latine.

BY that time the Scholar is made perfect in Forming Nouns and Verbs, it will be time to put him not only to learn an Author, but alſo to make *Latine*; ſuppoſing he hath in the mean time attained to ſome competencie of knowledge of the Rules for the Genders of Nouns and Preterperfect Tenſes, and Supines of Verbs, and for the Agreement and Government of Words, in Engliſh at leaſt, and however ſo farre, that he knows where to find, by turning thereto, ſuch rules as will be needfull for him to conſult withall for the true making of his Latine.

It is the uſual (and indeed the beſt) way to begin with Tranſlating. To render this work eaſie, and ſucceſsfull, it will be good to contrive Engliſhes, wherein the firſt things, and thoſe that are

moſt eaſie, yet neceſſary to make way for what is to follow, ſhall be propoſed. Such will be little Sentences conteining the Agreement of the Verb perſonal with his Nominative caſe; Adjective with his Subſtantive; or Subſtantive with his Subſtantive belonging to the ſame thing. Or the Government of an Accuſative caſe by a Verb; or a Genitive caſe by a former Subſtantive, and the like. After ſome time ſpent in theſe kind of Engliſhes, more difficult may be proceeded unto, namely ſuch as contein in them the Agreement and Government of the Relative, &c. The Teacher may ſupplie himſelf with Engliſhes for his Scholar, by tranſlating *Tullies* Sentences: or ſome Epiſtle of *Seneca*; or Oration of *Cicero*. This was the courſe My ſelf took, and with no ill ſucceſs. But if the Teacher liſt not to be at this profitable pains, he may take any ordinary Book, and propoſe it to be tranſlated in little parts; Such as *Witts Common-wealth*; *Moral Philoſophy*, Mr *Waſes* Eſſay of a practical Grammar, &c.

Let the Teacher in the firſt place teach his Scholar to know, and then cauſe him to put the Engliſh words out of the Artificial into the Natural order, and ſo read them, not ſuffering him, (as it is the uſe with ſome) juſt to fall to tranſlating them, as he finds them lying in the Engliſh book. The natural order being found, the work is half done; all will then run of it ſelf almoſt.

The Scholar will be taught the Natural Order of the Engliſh by Precept, and by Practice.

For *Precept*, the Teacher may be more particular, according to his own judgement, and his ſcholar's need. In the mean time he may inſtil into his Learner theſe few General Rules.

Rules

Rules touching the Natural Order of Words.

The Perſon ſpoken to, comes before the words ſpoken to him.

Words of Connexion come before the words or clauſes connected by them.

Words governing others, go before thoſe that are governed of them.

Words agreeing with others, follow thoſe that they agree with.

Words declaring others, follow thoſe that they declare.

Words depending on others, follow thoſe that they depend upon.

Theſe general Rules have ſome Exceptions, as moſt general Rules have: for the *Relative*, if it be not the Nominative caſe, comes before the word that governs it; ſo doth the *Interrogative* &c. and the *Adjective* oft comes before the *Subſtantive*, that it agrees with. But it is a ſure way ever to make the Subſtantive before the Adjective. But the obſerving of theſe I leave to the Teacher upon Emergencies.

For Practice, which ſuperadded to the knowledge of theſe few general Rules will in a manner do the whole work, I adviſe, that the Teacher do contrive, or chuſe out ſome ſentences, wherein the words are Artificially placed, and cauſe his Scholars (himſelf looking on) to reduce thoſe into the Natural Order. For inſtance; Suppoſe the Scholars had this Engliſh to tranſlate into Latine, *Of this glory O* Cajus Cæſar *which thou haſt lately gotten, thou haſt no partner*; the way to do it right and ſurely, were to caſt it into the Natural Order, *O* Cajus Cæſar, *thou haſt no partner of this glory, which thou haſt gotten*

lately. To reduce Verſes into Proſe after this manner, will be an uſeful practice to this end. And the labour will not be great. Three or four trials to an ordinary capacity will be ſufficient.

When the Natural Order of the words of the Engliſh is found, then let the Scholar ſeek out Latine words for the Engliſh, and conſider how to put them into good Syntax. Which when he hath a while ſtudied upon, let him come before the Teacher and doe it *vivâ voce*, as well as he can, the Teacher rectifying him where he is amiſs, and helping him on with that, which he cannot doe of himſelf. And ſtill as the Learner goes on from word to word, let the Teacher require a reaſon for his doing that word next: and be often asking, *what* is next to be done, and *why*: and when done, ask *why* it is, or ought to be *thus done*; and make the Learner underſtand a Reaſon and know a Rule for what he doth. And for the eaſe of the one, and help of the other, I ſhall here ſet down ſome directions to be uſed as need ſhall be.

Directions for making plain Latine.

I. Firſt, read the Sentence carefully over, and marke the Points; and whether the Speech be Poſitive, Negative, Interrogative, Exclamative, or Admirative.

II. Secondly, Obſerve whether there be in it any *Connexive* Particles, which are to be made in the order that they ſtand in; viz. in the beginning of the Sentence. Yet where *enim* is made for *For*, ſome word would be placed before it in the Latine; it not being uſual to begin Sentences with that word.

III. Thirdly, Obſerve whether there be in the Sentence

tence any *Vocative* case; for next after the Connexive Particles, if there be any, that is to be made; and if there be none, it is to be made first.

Fourthly, seek out the *Principal Verb*: that usually is the first Verb. *IV.*

But if the first Verb have coming immediately before it a Relative, as *that*, *who*, *whom*, *which*, &c. or a Conjunction, as *that*, *if*, &c. or, if it be the Infinitive mood, then seek further for another Verb.

1. Note. The Relative *that*, may be distinguished from *that* the Conjunction, by this, that the *Conjunction* hath ever a Nominative case betwixt it, and the following Verb; but the *Relative* hath none.

2. Note. Sometimes a Verb of the Infinitive mood begins a Sentence, and then stands instead of the Nominative case to the following Verb; as, *To rise betime in the morning is a very wholesome thing*; Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.

Fifthly, when the principal Verb is found out, then seek out the *Nominative case* to it; and, unless there be any Adverbs or Conjunctions, or Vocative case to be set down first, begin with that. *V.*

Note. That word is the Nominative case to the Verb, which with good sense answers to the question *who*, or *what*, made by the Verb as in this Sentence. *A clear conscience* which *needeth no excuse*, *feareth no accusation*; to know what is the *Nominative case* to the Verb *feareth*, the way is to put the word *what* to the Verb *feareth*, saying, *what feareth no accusation?* to which question, by reading the Sentence over again, it will appear what is to be answered, namely

namely that *A clear Conſcience feareth no accuſation*; ſo the word *Conſcience* is the Nominative caſe to that Verb.

VI. Sixthly, having fonnd out the Nominative caſe to the Verb, conſider of a Latine word fit for it, and ſet it down, minding therewithall the *Gender* and the *Number* of it.

VII. Seventhly, Having ſet down the Nominative caſe, conſider whether any other words come betwixt it, and its Verb.

If none come betwixt, then proceed to find out a Latine word proper for the Engliſh Verb; and when you have conſidered what *Mood*, and *Tenſe* it ſhould be of, then make it agree with its Nominative caſe in *Number* and *Perſon*: that is, if the Nominative caſe (for example) be of the ſingular Number and third perſon, then make your Verb to be of that number and perſon; and ſo what number or perſon ſoever your Nominative caſe be; let your Verb be of the ſame Number and Perſon.

Yet, if the Nominative caſe be a *Collective Noun*; or a *Noun of multitude*, the Verb may be of the plural Number, though the Nominative caſe be but of the ſingular; as *Pars in fruſta ſecant.* Virg. *In me turba ruunt.* Ovid.

If any words come between the Nominative caſe and the Principal Verb, then make into Latine whatſoever hath dependence on the Nominative caſe, namely.

1. That *Subſtantive* if there be any, that, as belonging to the ſame thing, agrees with it: and together with *that*, or rather immediately after that, make all thoſe words, if there be any, which depend on, or are governed of it; as in this Sentence, *Brennus the captain of the French entring the*

the Temple of Apollo, and ſpoiling it, was ſtricken with madneſs, and ſlew himſelf; after [*Brennus*] the Nominative caſe to the principal Verb [*was ſtriken*] is ſet down, muſt be made into Latine the Subſtantive [*Captain*] agreeing in caſe with [*Brennus*] and next to that the word [*French*] of the Genitive caſe, governed of foregoing word [*captain*].

2. That *Adjective*, whether Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, that agrees with it, if there be one; as in this Sentence; *A clear Conſcience, which needeth no excuſe, feareth no accuſation*, the word [*Conſcience*] which is the Nominative caſe to the Verb [*feareth*] being made into Latine, and ſet down, the next word to be made is the Adjective [*clear*], which agreeth with that Nominative caſe.

Note. What is the Subſtantive to any Adjective, may be known, by adding the word [*who*] or [*what*] to the Adjective: for the word anſwering to the queſtion ſo made by the Adjective; will be the Subſtantive to it. As in the foregoing Sentence; by adding [*what*] to the Adjective [*clear*] and ſaying by way of queſtion [*A clear what feareth no accuſation?*] it will by reading the Sentence over again, be found, that the word [*Conſcience*] is the Subſtantive to the Adjective [*clear*].

Having found what is the Subſtantive to the Adjective, conſider what *Gender* and *Number*, as well as what *Caſe* it is, and put the Adjective into the ſame *Gender*, *Number* and *Caſe* that the Subſtantive is of. And this is to be obſerved in all parts of a Sentence, and not onely in the beginning of it.

After the Adjective is made to agree with his Subſtantive, then conſider whether there do any words

words come betwixt it and the Principal Verb, which depend on it, or are governed of it, and if there doe come any, then next after it make them: As in this Sentence, *Mordorus spoiling Circes Temple, was stricken mad with all his Souldiers*; after that the Participle [*spoiling*], which agreeth with the Substantive [*Mordorus*], is made, then must be made the word [*Temple*] governed of [*spoiling*]; and the word [*Circes* which is the Genitive case governed of [*Temple*] the former of the two Substantives.

Note. When two Substantives come together, if the former end in [*s*] then 'tis very like that the former is the Genitive case governed of the the latter. And whether it be so or no, may be known, by putting away [*s*] from the end of the word, and setting [*of*] before it, and reading before both, the Substantive that follows it. Thus if instead of [*Circēs temple*] it be read [*the temple of Circe*] it is visible, that [*Circe*] is the Genitive case governed of [*temple*] and that [*Circes*] is put for [*of Circe*].

3. That Substantive (if there be any) that is governed of the foregoing Substantive in the Genitive or Ablative case; as in this Sentence. *A man of no honestie is worthy of no trust*; after the Nominative case [*A man*] is made into Latine, the words [*of no honesty*] are next to be made into Latine; whereof the first [*of*] is but a sign of the case, and so is included in the Latine of the word [*honesty*]; the second word [*no*] is an Adjective agreeing with the following Substantive [*honesty*], and therefore not to be made into Latine, till the word [*honesty*], wherewith it agrees, be first made (for Substantives are alwayes to be made into Latin before their Adjectives, unless

in

in *Interrogative*, or *Indefinite* ſpeeches) ſo that the third word [*honeſty*] governed of the foregoing Subſtantive [*man*] is to be made into Latine, thus, *Vir probitatis nullius*; or *Vir probitate nullâ.*

When I ſpeak of Subſtantives governed of Subſtantives in any other but the Genitive caſe, I do not ſpeak κατ' ἐξοχὴν but *cum vulgo*; not minding to Criticize at all here.

4. That *Relative* (if there be any) which hath reference to the foregoing Nominative Caſe and what depends on it, which is a particular clauſe, branch or member of the Sentence; As in this Sentence, *A clear conſcience, which needeth no excuſe, feareth no accuſation*, the Relative [*which*] with the reſt of that clauſe depending thereon, viz. the words [*needeth no excuſe*] is to be made into Latine, next after the Nominative caſe to the principal Verb, viz. the word [*conſcience*] and his Adjective [*clear*]: thus *conſcientia pura, quæ excuſatione non eget, accuſationem non timet.*

Eightly. When you have made into Latine, not only the Nominative caſe but alſo all that depends both on it, and on the words agreeing with, or governed of it, and is neceſſary, or fit to be made into Latine together with it, or immediately after it, then proceed to make into Latine the *Principal Verb*. And, as was ſaid before, after you have by the Form of the Speech, and by the Signs of the Tenſes, found out, what *Mood and Tenſe*, the Verb is to be of, then make it accordingly of that *Mood* and *Tenſe*; and alſo of that *Number* and *Perſon*, that the Nominative caſe, wherewith it agrees, is of. *VIII.*

The *Number* of the Nominative Caſe is known, by

by its signifying one, or more of the Things, or Persons that it is the Name of.

The *Person* of the Nominative case, if it have a Pronoun joyned with it, namely one of these [*Ego, tu, ille; nos, vos, illi*] is known by the *Person* of the Pronoun joyned with it. *Ego* and *Nos*, or *I*, and *We* being of the First Person, and so that Noun that is joyned with them; *Tu* and *Vos* or *Thou* and *Ye*, being of the Second Person, and so that Noun that is joyned with them; *Ille* and *Illi*, or *He* and *They* (and so all other Pronouns) being of the Third Person, and so those Nouns that they are joyned unto.

If the Noun, which is of the Nominative case, have no Pronoun expresly joyned with it, it is to be considered, what Pronoun it may have joyned with it, or put to stand for it, and such Person, as that Pronoun is, (which generally is of the third Person) Such Person is the Nominative case to be conceived to be of, and in such Person the Verb to agree with it.

Generally the Nominative case comes before the Verb. Yet sometimes the Verb, or at least the Sign of the Verb, is set before the Nominative case, viz.

1. In *Interrogative* speeches, wherein a question is asked, as, *Lovest thou the King? Doth he love the King?*

2. In Verbs of the *Imperative Mood*, where something is commanded, or permitted, as *Love thou the King. Do thou love the King. Let us love the King.*

3. In certain Phrases or Forms of speaking, where these Particles [*it*] or [*there*] are joyned with the Verb: as, *It is my book; There came one to me.* Where [*book*] the Nominative case to

[*it*]

[*is*] in the former Sentence; and [*one*] the Nominative caſe to [*came*] in the latter Sentence, is ſet after the Verb, whoſe Nominative caſe it is, and with which it is to agree.

When [*it*] or [*there*] come with a Verb before a Noun, then mind, whether that Verb be not a *Verb Impersonal* (i. e. one of thoſe Verbs commonly ſo called, and uſually ſet without any Nominative caſe before them) for, [*it*] and [*there*] are Signs of an Impersonal Verb; and if it be, then the word that ſeems to be the Nom. muſt be ſuch caſe as the Verb Impersonal doth govern; as *There muſt be ſome body*; Oportet eſſe aliquem.

If the Nominative caſe come after the Verb, or after the Sign of the Verb, then in writing down or reading, *viva voce*, the Engliſh into Latine, write or read the words in the order they ſtand in, viz. Firſt the Verb, then the Nominative caſe, as *Loveſt thou the King? Amas tu Regem?* Do thou love the King. *Ama tu Regem, It is my Book. Eſt liber meus. There came one to me. Venit ad me quidam.*

Yet this order is not always neceſſarily to be obſerved but may ſometimes be altered. as *Tune amas Regem?* or *Tu amas Regem? Liber meus eſt. Quidam ad me venit*, may well enough be ſaid.

Ninthly, When the Principal Verb is made, then conſider what word, or words follow it, in order to the making of them into Latine. *IX.*

1. If an *Adjective* come after it without any Subſtantive, then moſt likely that Adjective hath reference to that Subſtantive, which is the Nominative caſe to the Verb: and if ſo, it is to be made alſo in the Nominative caſe, (what caſe ſoever the

Verb

Verb do govern after him) : as *Peter ſleepeth void of care*; *Petrus dormit ſecurus.* And however, it muſt, by putting the word [*who*, or *what* &c.] to the Engliſh Adjective be found out, what Subſtantive the Adjectives referrs unto, with which when found, the Adjective (as was ſaid before) muſt be made to agree.

2. If a *Subſtantive* come after the principal Verb, (whether with or without an Adjective) in the ſame clauſe or member of the Period, or Sentence, it is then governed of the Verb, and is to be put in ſuch caſe as the verb by vertue of its own ſignification, or uſe in Authors, or Rule in Grammar requires to have after it, whether Genitive, Dative, Accuſative, or Ablative.

And the ſame thing is to be conſidered, and obſerved touching all caſual words coming after all other verbs, though they be not the Principal in the Sentence.

3. If there come betwixt the verb and the ſubſtantive any Caſual Particle, or Prepoſition, then it is to be conſidered, what caſe words are to be of which have thoſe Particles, or Propoſitions coming before them; or what caſe of a Noun, that Verb having this, or that Particle, Sign, or Token after it, is by Grammar Rule to govern: and accordingly the Engliſh is to be made into Latine.

Caſual Particles are, *of*, *to*, *for*, *in*, *into*, *with*, *through*, *from*, *by*, &c.

Grammar Rules guiding to the Caſe of the verb by the token or ſign going before the Noun, are theſe. *All manner of Verbs put Acquiſitively, that is to ſay, with theſe tokens* to, *or* for *after them will have a* Dative *caſe. All Verbs require an Ablative caſe of the Inſtrument with this Sign* with *before it*, &c.

4. If

4. If there come more *Substantives then one* after the Verb, then it is to be considered, whether those Substantives do belong to the same, or to divers things,

If they belong *to the same* thing, then they are to be put in the same Case: as *They drive away the drones a sluggish cattel from the hives, Ignavum fucos pecus à præsepibus arcent.* This is as well to be observed concerning Substantives coming *before the Verb.*

If the Substantives belong to the same thing, there may be with good sense and English, set between them, these words, *who is*, or *which is*, or *which are*: as here, sluggish cattel, *the drones which are, a sluggish cattel.*

If they belong *to divers things*, then it is to be considered what respect each Substantive hath to the Verb (for one and the same verb may, upon divers considerations, govern many and divers Cases, viz. one of the *Thing*; another of the *Person*; another of the *Cause*, *Manner*, *Adjunct*, *Instrument*, &c. (as, *Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te præsente, propriâ manu*) and accordingly each Noun is to be put into such case, as the verb according to that respect that the Noun hath to the Verb, doth require of the Noun.

If *any Casual Particle* come betwixt the Nouns, then they belong to *divers things*, and have different respects to the Verb. But if there come *no casual* Particle betwixt them, nor any Comma or other Point, then they belong to the same thing, and have the same respect to the Verb, and are to be made by the same case as was said before.

5. If there be any *Substantive* following the Verb, that hath no respect to the Verb, then it is

governed of ſome other Subſtantive or Adjective or other Word coming betwixt the Verb and it; and ſuch caſe as the Subſtantive or Adjective or other Word governs, ſuch caſe is that Noun to be of.

This is to be obſerved alſo in all parts of the Sentence, as well before, as after the Verb. For in all parts of the Sentence, the following word is governed of that governing word that in the Natural Order of the Words goes next before it, in the ſame clauſe, or part of the Sentence; except it be a *Relative*, or *Interrogative*, &c. which if they be not the Nominative caſe, nor, have a Preposition coming before them, are ever governed of ſome word coming after them, what caſe ſoever they be of.

The *Natural Order* of Words is that, according to which, The words are placed ſo, that words depending on others for their gender, number, caſe, perſon, mood &c. are ſet after thoſe whereon they depend (as hath been ſhewn) which is not obſerved; but much gone contrary unto in that order of words, which is called artificial.

6. If any *other Verb* come after the Principal Verb; it is to be conſidered, whether there do any caſual word expreſly, or implicitly come betwixt the foregoing and following Verb; and if *no caſual* word come betwixt, then the latter Verb is to be of the Infinitive mood: as, *I deſire to learn.*

But if *any caſual* word, though but a Pronoun, come between the two Verbs, then though the latter Verb may be *the Infinitive mood*, (which if it be, then the caſual word foregoing is generally to be the accuſative caſe) as, *I bid thee be gone*,

or

or *I bid that thou be gone, Jubeo te abire. I am glad that you are in health, Gaudeo te valere.* Yet it may also may be the *Subjunctive mood* with *ut*, either expressed, or understood together with it; (but then the Casual word foregoing must be the Nominative case) as, *I bid thee be gone, Jubeo ut tu abeas. See that you have a good heart, Fac habeas animam fortem,* or with *quod* (accordingly as the nature of the Verb shall require) as, *Quod tu valeas gaudeo.* See *Treat.* of *Eng. Partic.* ch. 75. *r.* 3, 4, 8.

And if the foregoing verb do govern a Dative case, then the casual word coming before the latter verb (if it be made by the Infinitive mood) may indifferently be put either in the Dative, as governed of the foregoing verb: or in the Accusative by reason of the Infinitive mood following. So we may indifferently say. *Non licet homini,--* or *Non licet hominem esse, ut vult.* See *Treat.* of *Eng. Partic. c.* 34. *r.* 21.

7. If there come *more Verbs then one*, after the Principal Verb, it is to be considered, whether the latter also of them, as well as the former, be governed of the Principal Verb, or of some former that goes before it self, yet comes after the principal verb.

If it be governed of the *Principal Verb*, then some copulative conjunction expressly, or implicitly comes betwixt it and the Former Verb: and it is so to be made, as the former was, for mood.

If it be *not governed of the Principle Verb*, then it is governed either of some foregoing Verb or Noun Substantive or Adjective, and is the Infinitive mood, which may be varied by a Subjunctive mood with a Conjunction, or Relative.

See *Treat. of Eng. Partic. c.* 83. *r.* 11. *n.* 7.

Note. Verbs are governed of Subſtantives, and Adjectives, as well as of Verbs, as *Sed jam tempus eſt ad id, quod inſtituimus, accedere.* Cic. *Itane es paratus facere omnia?* Ter.

And this is to be obſerved alſo in all parts of a Sentence or Period, and not only in the body, or latter end of it, or after the Principal Verb. *Audax omnia perpeti Gens humana ruit pro vetitum nefas. Hor. Sed ſi tantus amor caſus cognoſcere noſtros, &c. Virg.*

If there be any *Relatives* in the Sentence, then of every Relative is to be conſidered what it *agrees* with, and (if it be not the Nominative caſe) what it is *governed* of.

The *Agreement* of the Relative is with its Antecedent; that is a Subſtantive going before, which may again, without interruption or diſturbance to the ſenſe be repeated together with the Relative: as, *Wretched is that man which is in love with mony*; or *wretched is that man, which* [*man*] *is in love with mony.* Here [*man*] goes before [*which*] and is, or may be repeated together with it.

To know what word is the Antecedent to the Relative, add the word [*who, what, whoſe*, or *whom, &c.*] to the Relative by way of queſtion, and the word that, upon reading the Sentence over again, with good ſenſe anſwers to that queſtion, is that Subſtantive Antecedent, with which it agrees. as in this Example, *The man is wiſe which ſpeaketh few things*; to know what is the Antecedent to the Relative [*which*], add the word [*what*] to the word [*which*] and then make a queſtion with thoſe two words, and the following Verb, ſaying, *which what ſpeaketh?* The anſwer whereto will be viſibly this (upon reading the Sentence over again) *which man,*

man speaketh: so that [*Man*] is the Antecedent to the Relative [*which*]. For upon every such question, the Antecedent will be repeated in the answere together with the Relative.

If the word [*that*] be the Relative, turn it into [*who*] or [*which*] &c. and then it will be the easilyer found out, what is is the Antecedent Substantive, wherewith it is to agree; as, *Wretched is the man that* [i. e. *which*] *is in love with mony.*

Having found what word is the Antecedent to the Relative, make it agree with it in *Gender, Number* and *Person*, that is, set it down of the same Number and Gender, and suppose it to be of the same Person with its Antecedent; and let the *Person of the* Relative appear by the Person of the Verb, to which the Relative is the Nominative case, in making the Verb, that hath the Relative for his Nominative case, to be of that Person, which that Substantive is of, that the Relative referrs unto, and agrees with. If the Relative *be not the Nominative case*, then the Person of it is not to be heeded. The *Relative is* the Nominative case to the Verb, when there comes no other Nominative case betwixt the Relative and the Verb.

If the Relative be not the Nominative case to the following Verb, nor have a Preposition coming with it, nor be together with his Substantive put absolute, then it is governed generally of the Verb, that follows it, though sometimes of other words; as may be seen in the Accedence Rules for the case of the Relative.

The *Relative* that is governed of the Verb, must be such case, as any other Substantive were to be of, if it followed the Verb.

If the *Relative be not governed* of the Verb;

then, if it be a casual word, that the Relative is governed of, such case as that word would govern after it, such case must the Relative be of, that comes before it. And that casual word, of which the Relative is governed, must be such case as the Verb will govern after him; as, *Cujus numen adoro*; *Cui similem non vidi*; *Quorum optimum ego habeo.* Unless there be some other word in the Sentence governing that word of which the Relative is governed; as, *Quæ nunc non est narrandi locus*; which word yet is to be such case as the Verb governs after it.

Yet further to bring Children by easie steps to the understanding of that great difficulty, which lies in putting the Relative into its right case, gender, and number, wherein most usually they fail, the Teacher may be pleased to take this course with them.

1. Give them Englishes wherein the Antecedent Substantive, to which the Relative refers, shall not only go before the Relative, but be also repeated together with it; as, *He had a knife with which knife he would have slain himself.*

2. Cause them in their daily Translations to enclose within two square brackets [] the repeated Substantive, wherewith the Relative, as being a perfect Adjective, must agree in case, gender, and number; after this form. *Ferrum habuit quo* [*ferro*] *se occideret.*

3. Cause them in the fair writing of their whole weeks Exercises to omit the repetition of the antecedent substantive, yet in the construing thereof (as also of their daily Lectures) to express it, as if it were written; as if, for example, having written *Ferrum habuit quo se occideret*, they should in construing express *ferro* with *quo*, saying, *quo ferro*, with which knife.

4. After

4. After they have been practiced for some time in this kind of exercise, then give them Englishes to translate, wherein the antecedent substantive shall only be expressed in the clause going before the Relative, and not repeated together, with the Relative in the same clause where it is; as *He had a knife, with which he would have slain himself.* Yet in the Translating them, cause them still to express the substantive together with the Relative; *Ferrum habuit quo* [*ferro*] *se occideret.* This will haunt them, wherever they meet with a Relative, even of course to seek out a Substantive for it, to express together with it. Of which repetition of the Substantive together with the Relative, there be abundant examples in classick Authors. Such is that of *Cicero's, Cum viderem ex eâ parte homines, cujus partis nos vel principes numerabamur;* pro Quint. And that of *Cæsar's, Legem promulgaverat, quâ lege regnum* Jubæ *publicaverat,* 2. Bel. Civ. That of *Terentius, Habet bonorum exemplum, quo exemplo sibi licere id facere, quod illi fecerunt, putat,* Heaut. Prol. And that of *Plautus, Est causa, quâ causâ simul mecum ire veritus est,* Epid, 1. 1. Yet this Repetition, it will be the Masters discretion to order his Scholars to omit, as he shall see cause.

5. Teach them to fill up such Elliptical passages as have only that case of the substantive expressed, in which the Relative coming together with it, doth agree, that wherein it might, or ought to differ from it, being omitted; thus, *Urbem quam statuo vestra est,* i. e. *Urbs vestra est, quam urbem statuo,* or, *Quam urbem statuo vestra urbs est.* So, *Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit? Quas dedit Eunuchus turbas quem nobis dedisti Eunuchum?* or, *Quas turbas dedit Eunuchus, quem Eunuchum dedisti nobis?* So *Quis non malarum, quas amor curas*

habet, hæc inter obliviſcitur? i. e. *Inter hæc quis non obliviſcitur curarum malarum, quas curas amor habet?* So, *Ad Cæſarem quam miſi epiſtolam, ejus exemplum fugit me tum tibi mittere.* i. e. *Fugit me tum tibi mittere ejus epiſtolæ exemplum, quam ad Cæſarem miſi epiſtolam.* So, *Quos pueros cum Mario miſerunt, epiſtolam mihi attulerunt hoc exemplo.* i. e. *Pueri illi hoc exemplo mihi attulerunt epiſtolam, quos pueros cum Mario miſerunt.*

6. Give them ſuch Engliſhes for tranſlation, as ſhall have in them *man*, or *thing*, (either expreſſed, or underſtood in the Pronoun put for them,) to be the Subſtantive wherewith the Relative muſt agree: as *wretched is he* [i. e. *the man*] *that is in love with money. Miſer eſt* [*homo*] *qui homo* [*nummos admiratur. That* [i.e. *that thing* [*is good, which* [i.e. *which thing*] *all* [*things*] *deſire. Bonum illud eſt, quod omnia appetunt.*

Thus by eaſie ſteps will children be brought, not only to underſtand how to render thoſe Relative Particles *that, who, which, whoſe, whereof, whom*, &c. in right caſe, gender or number (than the doing of which there is ſcarce any thing more hard to them) but alſo to overcome the greateſt difficulties, that lie in the Regiment of the Relative. And now I return to goe on with thoſe Directions for Plain Latine making which yet remain.

XI. If the Speech be *Negative*, then obſerve to ſet the Negative Particles before the Verb.

The *Negative Particle* uſually comes betwixt the Verb and the Sign of the Verb, if any Sign of the Verb be expreſſed: as *I do not perceive what your intent is.* But if no Sign of the Verb be expreſſed, then it comes after the Verb; as, *I perceive not what your intent is. Ego, quid agas, nihil intelligo.*

XII. *Interrogative Speeches* have the ſame Obſervations

mоſtly

moſtly that are in *Aſſertive* Speeches, The Interrogative Pronominal Particles being Nominative caſes to Verbs, and being govetned of a Prepoſition before them, or elſe of a Verb, or ſome other word comming after them: as, *Quis enim erat, qui non ſciret? Quid hoc impudentius dici, aut fingi poteſt? Quæ civitati facta eſt injuria? Quantos fluctus excitari concionum videtis? Cui quæſo tandem probaſti? Cui novæ calamitati locus ullus relictus eſſet?*

XIII. In *Admirative* and *Exclamative* Speeches, Caſual words are put into divers Caſes, without any Verb expreſſed to govern them in ſuch Caſe by vertue of the Particle of *Admiring*, or *Exclaming*, acccordingly as uſe hath Subjoyned ſuch and ſuch caſes unto ſuch and ſuch Particles.

Of the Ablative abſolute.

XIV. When a Subſtantive comes together with a Participle (expreſſed or underſtood) in the ſame clauſe, and neither is the Nominative caſe to any following Verb, nor hath before it any other word of which it is governed, then it is put *Abſolute*, and ſo is to be made by the *Ablative Caſe*, as *The King comming, the enemies fled, Rege veniente hoſtes fugerunt.*

Note. If any other Nominative Caſe, though but of a Prononn, come between the Subſtantive that hath the Participle joyned to it, and the Verb, then that Subſtantive is not the Nominative Caſe to the Verb. But if no Nominative Caſe come betwixt, then it is (not put abſolute but) the Nominative Caſe to the Verb: as *The King coming made the enemies flie; Rex veniens hoſtes fugavit.*

In ſpeaking of this Ablative Caſe I follow the received way; not being ignorant what is thought by Learned Perſons of that Conſtruction,

ction, namely that it is governed of some prepositi-on understood, viz. *a*, *ab*, *sub*, *cum*, or *in*. See Treat. of *Eng. Particles* c. 20. r. 1. n. 3.

Well now, when the Learner is able, what by his own study, and what by these Directions, and what by his Teachers further Instruction, where it is needfull, to read the English into Latine *vivâ voce*, then let him go and write it down in a loose Paper, and bring it to his Teacher, to consider of his manner of *writing*, and *pointing* it; who is accordingly to inform him of what he knows not, and rectifie him in what he sees amiss.

That being done, let the Master cast the words out of the Natural into the Artificial Order, and mend the Phrase, if need be, and then cause the Scholar to transcribe the exercise so done into his fair book and after that get it to construe, and parse, and say by heart.

As in Translating it out of English into Latine he observed the *Natural Order* of the wotds, so in construing (as it is called) out of Latine into English, let him exactly, as farre as the Idiome of the Languages will permit, observe the Natural Order of the words.

Of the Naturall Order of Latine words there be precepts to be found in *Vossius*'s Latine Grammar at the end of the Syntaxis; also in *Brinslie*'s Gram. School. ch. 8. in Mr. *Clarks Dux Grammaticus* p. 259. and in the end of *Phrases Wintonienses* which I forbear to transcribe.

Let the Scholars parsing be performed all by himself alone, taking the words in the Natural order, and going of himself (without being asked any thing by his Teacher, save where he omits any thing necessary) from word to word, till he have gone over the whole; declining Nouns and Verbs, and giving Rules for the Genders of the One, & Pre-

terperfect

terperfect Tense & Supines of the other: & so of the other parts of Speech let him say what is fit to be said. But especially let him give account of the Syntax of every word; why this *Substantive* is of the Nominative case, that of the Genitive, the other the Dative, Accusative or Ablative. Why this Adjective is of this, that or the other case, gender, number; why this *Relative* is of this, or that number, or person; & why of this or the other case & what governs it; and with this *Verb* is of this Mood, Number, Person, &c. maintaining and justifying every thing by Grammar Rule or Example from classick Authours.

And here by the way let me take occasion to advise that the same course, be observed in his Authors, that he learns, construing his Lectures therein, in the Natural Order, and parsing them all by himself alone in that order. It is scare imaginable how much more beneficial this way of *parsing alone* is, beyond the other more usual way of asking questions skippingly, here a word, and there a word, according to the Masters fancie, list, or leisure. And if there be more then one together, one may take one piece, and another another piece by courses, till all be done. If one by agreement do get one piece, and another another, it will not be much amiss to wink at it for a while, till they be a little perfect at it; that plot is quickly broke, by putting them but once or twice out of their road.

Lastly, to return, on the *Repetition day*, let the Scholar say all his weeks work by heart, and both read it out of English into Latine, and out of Latine into English: and where the Teacher thinks needfull, let him ask him a Rule for, or a Reason of the Construction, or the like.

Now when the Teacher discerns his Scholar by this practice to be any thing perfect at understanding

ding of, and finding out the Natural Order of Words ſo that he can make a piece of Ordinary Engliſh into plain and true Latine in that way, then let him put him forward to make his Latine *good*, as well as *true*: and that will be done by teaching him ſome competency of skill in theſe Five things. The *Artificial Order* of words; The *Uſe of Phraſes*; *Variation of Phraſes*; *Elegancies* of the *Particles*; and *Idioms* of both the *Languages* Engliſh and Latine. Of which I ſhall ſpeake ſomething in Order.

Though I have before adviſed to take ſome *Engliſh Book*, and give it to the Scholar to turn into *Latine*, becauſe that is leaſt trouble to the Teacher; yet as the more profitable courſe for the Learner, I ſhould adviſe rather, that the Teacher would frame for him Engliſhes of his own contrivance, beginning with ſuch as are moſt eaſie, and lead on, and make way for thoſe that are harder, and are not charged with many ſeveral and difficult operations at once, which can hardly but be, where any Book is taken in hand to tranſlate, unleſs perhaps it be ſome one contrived on ſuch deſign, in that method and order that is proper for ſuch purpoſe. I ſhould in this caſe adviſe that the Teacher ſhould take the *Ordinary Grammar*, and frame Engliſhes ſutable to the Rules of it, half a dozen, or more, for every Rule, going on with it, till he have gone through the whole, and give his Scholars thoſe Engliſhes to tranſlate. Thus will they go on ordely, and ſteadily in their work, and proceed with profit, and chearfulneſs, having nothing to encounter with, but what they have both Rule and Example for to work by before their eyes, and ſo ſtrength and skil to deal with and over-maſter. And if there be any Rules in the Grammar,

or

or Accedence, which ſtand not with the reſt, of the ſame nature and ſubject, The Teacher may in due place take in them too: and if he have yet any further Obſervations of his own, or others, that tend to the more full underſtanding of that part of the Grammar, which he is upon, he may add them alſo, and ſo give to his Scholars, by degrees, a complete Syſteme of the *Syntaxis*, both *right*, and *figurative*, in every part of it. This may ſeem a Troubleſome courſe: *Yet* done for once, it is done for alwayes: and unleſs the Teacher be exceedingly knowing already, I ſhall aſſure him, that the profit, that will come to himſelf thereby, is ſuch, as will not only countervail, but abundantly recompence that trouble that is therein? And as well for his encouragement thereto, as for other purpoſe beſide, I have here ſet him an Example of ſuch practice, in Engliſh Examples framed according to the Rules of the *Three Latine Concords*. Himſelf at his leaſure may doe the like, and goe on with the reſt if he ſhall ſee need.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

Concordantia Nominativi & Verbi.

¶ Verbum Perſonale cohæret cum Nominativo Numero & perſonâ: ut *Nunquam ſera eſt ad bonos mores via.*
Fortuna nunquam perpetuo eſt bona.

* A Verb Perſonal agreeth with his Nominative caſe in Number and Perſon: as *Præceptor legit, vos verò negligitis.* The Maſter readeth and ye regard not.

* And the Nominative ſhall in making and con-

construing Latin, be set before the Verb.

† Examples, where Personal Pronouns are onlie Nominative Cases.

Indic. Mood Present tense Active with a signe.

I doe fear; thou doest laugh; he doth strike; we do crie; ye do call; they do answer.

Without a Signe.

I love; thou teachest; he readeth; we hear; ye learn; they play.

Indic. Pres. Pass.

I am loved; thou art taught; he is read; we are called; ye are stricken; they are frighted.

I am bought; thou art sold; he is beaten; we be blamed; ye be wounded; they be healed.

Preterimperfect tense Active.

I did loose; thou didst seek; he did find; we did sit; ye did stand; they did walk.

I mourned; thou wepteſt; he laugh'd; we sung; ye leap't; they danced.

Passive.

I was named; thou wast called; he was reproved; we were warned; ye were scourged; they were killed.

I was girded; thou wert armed; he was cut; we were hurt; ye were lead; they were drawn.

Preterperf. Active.

I have fought; thou hast overcome; he hath washed; we have wiped; ye have scratched; they have bitten.

I have mown; thou hast reaped; she hath scattered; we have gathered; ye have laid up; they have carried out.

Passive.

I have been carried; thou hast been bound; he hath been blamed; we have been praised; ye have been healed; they have been saved.

I have been honoured; thou hast been crowned; she hath been decked; we have been painted; ye have been nursed; they have been clothed.

Pre-

Preterpluperf. Active.

I had tried; thou hadst consented; he had said; we had believed; ye had held; they had escaped.

I had written; thou hadst received; she had read; we had recalled; ye had replied; they had granted.

Passive.

I had been seen; thou hadst been heard; he had been accused; we had been condemned; ye had been saved; they had been killed.

I had been baptized; thou hadst been confirmed; she had been instructed; we had been corrected; ye had been admonished; they had been commended.

Future tense Active.

I will ask; thou wilt answere; he will have; we will hold; ye will command; they will obey.

I shall touch; thou shalt perceive; she shall crave; we shall give; ye shall fain; they shall frame.

Passive.

I will be sought; thou wilt be found; he will be taken; we will be freed; ye will be deteined; they will be dismissed.

I shall be eased; thou shalt be burdened; she shall be received; we shall be rejected; ye shall be commended, they shall be lamented.

* Except a *question* be asked and then the Nominative is set after the Verb ——

Love I? teacheſt thou? readeth he? hear we? learn ye? play they?

Feared I? laugheſt thou? ſtriketh he? Crie we? called ye? anſwered they?

* Or after the ſign of the Verb as,

Amas tu? *Love thou?* Venitne Rex? *doth the King come?*

Do *I play? doeſt thou learn? doth he profit?* Doe *we ſee? do ye hear? do they feel?*

Did *I looſe? didſt thou ſeek?*

ſeek? did he find? did we ſit? did ye ſtand? did they walk?

Have I fought? haſt thou overcome? hath he read? have we heard? have ye ſung? have they danced?

Had I tried? hadſt thou conſented? had he ſaid? had we believed? had ye ſtayed? had they departed?

Shall I ask? wilt thou anſwere? will he have? ſhall we hold? ſhall we command? will they obey?

Am I loved? art thou feared? Is he called? are we heard? Be ye ſtricken? be they frighted?

Was I touched? wer't thou named? was he warned? were we blamed? were ye ſcourged? were they killed?

Have I been honoured? haſt thou been fed? hath ſhe been nurſed? have we been decked? have ye been clothed? have they been ſpoiled?

Had I been heard? hadſt thou been ſeen? had ſhe been condemned? had we been ſaved? had ye been killed? had they been buried?

Shall I be touched? wilt thou be perceived? ſhall he be ſought? ſhall we be found, will ye be lead? will they be drawn?

* Likewiſe if the Verb be of the Imperative Mood; as, *Amato ille* Let him love.

Write thou; fight he; eat ye; drink they; Sing thou; dance he; write ye, read they? doe thou goe; let him ſtay; run we: do ye ſit, let them ſtand.

Laugh thou; ſhout he; let us ſleep; walk ye; let them ride.

Paſſive.

Be thou ruled; let him be broken; be we held; be ye bound; let them be ſcourged.

Be thou loved; be he feared; let us be tamed; be ye enriched; be they advanced.

* And ſometime when this ſign *it*, or *there* commeth before the Engliſh of the Verb; as, *Eſt liber meus*, It is my book. *Venit ad me quidam.* There came one

came one to me.

It is a horſe; There was a mare; it is night; it was day. There blows wind; there falls rain. There comes a man; there went a woman It is I: it was thou. It had been he; It may be we; it might be ye, it ſhall be they.

† Yet it is not neceſſary, that in all theſe caſes the Nominative be alwayes ſet after the Verb: for *tu eras?* may as well be ſaid, *Eras tu? Liber eſt?* as, *Eſt liber.*

Potential Mood Preſent Tenſe.

I may command; thou mayſt intreat; he may weep; we may laugh; ye may fight; they may overcome.

I may be touched; thou mayeſt be tickled; he may be burned; we may be buried; ye may be covered; they may be concealed.

Preterimperfect Tenſe.

I might ſay: wouldſt thou believe? ſhould he read? we ought to learn. could ye ſee? they ſhould think. Should I be commended? thou wouldeſt be diſpraiſed. Ought he to be deſpiſed? we ſhould be blamed. Ye would be condemned. Ought they to be puniſhed?

Preterperfect Tenſe.

I might have thought; thou wouldeſt have believed; he ſhould have ſaid; we ought to have underſtood; ye ſhould have perceived; they would have pronounced.

I ſhould have been afflicted; thou wouldſt have been bewayled; he ought to have been vexed; we ſhould have been freed; ye would have been oppreſſed; they ought to have been warned.

Preterpluperfect Tenſe.

I had felt; thou hadſt feared; he had needed; we had believed; ye had come: they had gone.

I had been compared;

thou hadſt been preferred; he had been refuſed; we had been choſen; ye had been accepted; they had been rejected.

Future Tenſe.

I ſhall have eaten; you will have drunk; he will have ſpoken; we ſhall have ſinned; ye will have ſorrowed; they ſhall have repented.

I ſhall have been ſaid; thou ſhalt have been ſeen; he ſhall have been fed; we ſhal ſhall have been filled; ye ſhall have been honoured; they ſhall have been ſcared.

† Examples where Nouns are the Nominative Caſes; and Firſt Nouns Subſtantives Proper.

Peter *ſleepeth*; Paul *prayeth*; Joſeph *ariſeth*; Marie *runneth*; Thomas *doubteth*; John *believeth*.

Elizabeth *rejoyced*; Lydia *did hearken*. Cæſar *fought*; Pompei *fled*.

Cicero *hath intreated*; Cato *had reſiſted*.. Antonie *ſhall drink*; Ovid *will write*.

The Horaces *kill*. *The* Curiaces *are killed*. *The* Decius's *died*. *The* Fabius's *were ſlain*. *The* Romans *have conquered*. *The* Parthians *have been vanquiſhed*.

The Perſians *will flie*; *The* Macedonians *ſhall purſue*. *The* Arabibians *ſhall be afrighted*. *The* Ægyptians *will be deſtroyed*.

Doth George *ſpeak*? *Did* Thomas *hear*? *Hath* Edward *taught*? *Had* Richard *learned*? *Will* Robert *profit*?

Weeps Cleopatra? *Sigh* Helena? *Do the* Trojans *mourne*? *Did the* Grecians *ſing*? *Have the* Athenians *fought*? *Had the* Lacedemonians *fled*? *will the* Gauls *be beaten*? *Shall the* Spaniards *be quieted*?

Would the Hunns *have been drowned*? *Might the* Scythians *have been tamed*? *Could the* Carthaginians *have been deſtroyed*? *Should the* Italians *have been enriched*? *Ought the*

the Brittons to have been robbed?

Secondly Nouns Substantives Common.

And First without any particle annexed.

Fire burneth; wood is burned; night hideth; day discloseth; winter wasteth; spring draweth on; summer approacheth; harvest is ended.

Wine is drunk; bread is baked; meat is eaten; flesh is rosted; corn is sown; hay is mown.

Doth gold glister? Did silver ting? hath brass rusted? will glass break? Is Iron heated? was lead melted? hath copper been beaten? had tinne been runne? shall pewter be scoured? Milk is curded; cream is strained; butter is churned; cheese is pressed; Curds are sweetened; cheese-cakes are baked; Trees grow; flowers smell: leaves shoot; apples ripen; pears hang: plummes fall: berries rot.

Boughs are shaken; cherries are piched; walnuts are bashed; small nuts are gathered; shells are cracked; kernels are eaten.

Swans sung; cocks crowed; hens cackled; chickens cheaped; pies chattered.

Men fought; women scolded; boys wrastled; girles scratched; children cried; servants laughed.

Let Knaves be cudgelled; let rogues be scourged; let beggars be whipped; let drunkards be fined; let thieves be hanged; let rebells be beheaded; Should scolds be ducked? would whores be shamed? ought whoremasters to be guelded? could adulterers be branded?

Travellers will talk; Souldiers will brag; Lawyers will wrangle; Merchants shall complain; Scholars will dispute; fools will prate.

Have eyes seen? have ears heard? have noses smelt? have tongues tasted? have hands felt?

Hath musick pleased? had learning flourished? will honour be sought? shall vertue be honoured?

will vice be punished? Arts are learned; ignorance is banished; servants are beaten; slaves are sold; much is spoken; little is minded; nothing is done; all is lost.

Secondly with the Particle [a] annexed.

A Dog barketh; a theif trembleth; a lion roared; a hare started; a partridge flew; a hawk pursued; a sword hath cut; a spear hath pierced; a mouse had slept; a cat had watched; a bird will flie; a fish will swimme.

Is a pen made? was a book written? hath a penknife been whetted? Had a line been drawn? will a blot be wiped out? shall a whetstone be rubbed? may a sponge be squeezed?

Thirdly with the Par- [the] annexed.

The Father doth sing; the mother laugheth; the child playeth.

The young man leaped; the old man danced.

The Lamb doth frisk; the Ew did bleat; the Bull hath lowed; the Ox had laboured; the Sow shall farrow; the Pig will squeak.

The Hog is fatted; the Heifer was killed; the Deer hath been hunted; the Horn had been winded; the huntsman will be wearied; the hunting shall be ended.

Is the King crowned? were the Rebels vanquished? Have the Soldiers been honoured? Had the Rebells been subdued? will the Citizens be oppressed? shall the Country-men be burdened?

Let the Fathers command; let the Children obey; let the Commanders direct; let the Souldiers fight.

The Husbands may labour; the wives should care; the Servants should work; the Children could play.

The Swallows may have come; the woodcocks might have staid; the cranes shall have departed.

Ex-

Examples where a *Noun* and a *Pronoun* come together, which is called in Grammar *Evocatio.*

¶ Cum prima vel ſecunda perſona immediatè ad ſe evocat tertiam, ambæ fiunt primæ, vel ſecundæ perſonæ: ut, *Ego pauper laboro, Tu dives ludis.*

I John *ſee. Thou* Peter *talkeſt. We* Edwards *run. Ye* Richards *ſtand*

I a Father ſpeak. Doſt thou a child hear? We ſouldiers fight. Doe ye Citizens flie?

I the Man will goe; Do thou the Woman ſtay. We the poor labour. Ye the Rich laugh.

We Apples ſwimme. Ye Stones doe ſink. Let Us Cocks crow. Doe ye Hens cackle. We loaves be cut. Ye Eggs be broken.

We Old men doe talk. Ye young men doe work. Doe ye young men work? Do ye young men work.

I Sun doe ſhine: thou Moon didſt bluſh: We Starrs ſang: Ye Heavens did rejoyce.

I a Maſter have taught. Have ye Scholars regarded?

† Note that the Verb muſt always be of that Number and Perſon that the Pronoun (whether it be expreſſed, or underſtood) is of.

Ego tuæ deliciæ iſthuc veniam. Magna pars ſtudioſorum amœnitates quærimus. ſub. *nos*
Æneas adſum ſub. *Ego.*
Populus ſuperamur ab uno. ſub. *nos.*

¶ Nominativus primæ vel ſecundæ perſonæ rariſſimè exprimitur, niſi Causâ Diſcretionis; ut, *Vos damnâſtis* quaſi dicat, *præterea nemo:* aut Emphaſis gratiâ: ut *Tu es patronus, tu pater, ſi deſeris tu*

perimus; quaſi dicat *præcipuè, & præ aliis tu patronus es.* Ovid. *Tu dominus, tu vir, tu mihi frater eris.*

I ſhouted; thou whiſperedſt; we walked; ye ran; I intreated; thou commandeſt; We were praiſed; ye were diſcommended; I gave; thou didſt receive; we came; ye went.

I ſhall be ſcourged; thou wilt be hanged; we ſhall be enriched; ye will be ſpoiled.

I will be a friend; I will be a Father; I will be a Husband.

Thou ſaveſt, thou defendeſt, thou feedeſt, thou clotheſt.

We went, we ſought, we found; ye were mocked, ye were ſcourged, ye were tormented.

¶ In Verbis quorum ſignificatio ad homines tantùm pertinet, tertiæ perſonæ nominativus ſæpe ſubauditur: ut eſt, fertur, dicunt, ferunt, aiunt, prædicant, clamitant & in ſimilibus; ut

Ter. *Fertur atrocia flagitia deſignâſſe.*

Ovid. *Teque ferunt iræ pœnituiſſe tuæ.*

How this ſhould be imitated in Engliſh I ſee not; and ſo paſs it over.

*And that caſual word that cometh next after the Verb, and anſwereth to the queſtion *whom*, or *what*, made by the Verb, ſhall commonly be the Accuſative caſe; as, *Amo magiſtrum.* I love the maſter.

Uſe makes perfect. I know him well. Truth gets hatred. Love covers offences. Honour nouriſheth artes. Vertue deſerves praiſe.

Doſt thou hear me? will I leave thee? ſhall he teach me?

Fear thou God; honour ye the King.

*Except the Verb do properly govern another Caſe after him to be conſtrued withall, as, *Si cupis placere magiſtro, utere diligentiâ, nec ſis tantus ceſſator ut calcaribus indigeas,*

gean, If thou covet to pleaſe thy maſter, uſe diligence and be not ſo ſlack, that thou ſhalt need ſpurres.

Nominative.

Love is a Loadſtone. Fire is hot. I am called John. *I am thought rich. I lie dreaming. He runneth eating. Thou drinkeſt ſtanding.*

Genitive.

He is accuſed of theft. He is acquitted of bribery. He is condemned of covetouſneſs. Pitie thy Father. Have compaſsion on thy Mother. Forget not thy Brother.

Dative.

Succour me. Profit thy ſelf. Diſprofit none. Pleaſe God. Obey the King; reſiſt ſin. Tell me quicklie. Anſwer him readily. Give to the poor. Lend to the rich.

Accuſative.

Uſe exerciſe. Enjoy comfort. I want mony; and yet I have diſcharged my dutie. Relie on vertue, but brag not of victory. Change fleſh for bread, but eat bread ſparingly. Be glad of a little.

¶ Non ſemper vox caſualis eſt Verbo Nominativus, ſed aliquando Verbum infinitum: ut Plaut. *Mentiri non eſt meum.*

To fight is manlie; to crie is childiſh; to flie is cowardly.

To lie is baſe; to ſteal is dangerous; to rob is deadly; to counterfeit is common.

To delay breeds danger; to make haſte is ſafe.

¶ Aliquando oratio, ut Ovid.

Adde quòd ingenuas didiciſſe fideliter artes
Emollit mores, Nec ſinit eſſe feros.

To love his Parents is the dutie of a child.

To honour the King is the duty of Subjects.

To fear God is the propertie of Chriſtians.

To do well and be ill ſpoken of, is the part of Kings.

To laugh much, bewrays follie.

To speak much, brings sin.

To grow rich makes proud.

To live a good life, gives hope of dying a happie death.

To love idleness brings to disgrace.

To delight in riot, tends to beggerie.

To strive with a mighty man is follie in a mean man.

For a wife to be chaste, is a vertue.

For a husband to be kind, is a praise.

For a Prince to be humble, is an honour.

For a Subject to be proud is a shame.

Columbus's *discovering* America, *rendered him famous.*

Alexander's *conquering* Darius, *wanne him glory.*

Cæsar's *beating* Pompey *procured him an Empire.*

That he took Carthage, *got* Scipio *honour.*

That he forgave his enemies, turned to Cæsar's *glory.*

That he fought against his Country, proved Catiline's *ruine.*

His killing Hector, *made* Achilles *dreadful.*

Her relieving the Trojans, *wanne* Dido *praise.*

Their being at odds amongst themselves, was the cause of the Grecians *overthrow.*

¶ Aliquando Adverbium cum Genitivo: ut, *Partim virorum cecidêrunt in bello. Partim signorum sunt combusta.*

† This cannot be exemplified in English. But an Adverbs being a a Nominative to a Verb without a Genitive Case may be exemplified.

That to morrow *when comes it?*

I wish that before *had been afterward.*

That now *will never be.*

That hey-brave *quite undid him.*

¶ Ex-

† Examples of Conſtruction where many Nominative Caſes come before a Verb, which is called in Latine, *Syllepſis.*

¶ Syllepſis ſeu conceptio, eſt comprehenſio indignioris ſub digniore.

Copulatum per conjunctionem, *Et, nec neque*, & *Cum* pro *Et* acceptum, eſt pluralis numeri; ac proinde verbum exigit plurale; quod quidem verbum perſonâ cum digniore ſuppoſito quadrabit: ut *Quid tu & ſoror facitis? Ego & Mater perimus. Tu & uxor teſtes eſtote.*

* Many Nominative Caſes ſingular with a Conjunction Copulative coming between them, will have a Verb plural, which Verb plural ſhall agree with the Nominative Caſe of the moſt worthy perſon; as, *Ego & tu ſumus in tuto.* I and thou be in ſafeguard. *Tu & Pater periclitamini.* Thou and thy Father are in jeopardie. *Pater & Præceptor accerſunt te.* Thy Father and thy Maſter have ſent for thee.

¶ Dignior autem eſt perſona prima quàm ſecunda; & dignior ſecunda quàm tertia.

* Where note, that the firſt perſon is more worthy than the ſecond, and the ſecond more worthy than the third; as, *Ego & mater ſumus in tuto. Tu atque frater eſtis in periculo. Neque ego, neque tu ſapimus.*

Engliſh Examples where the Nominative Caſes are of the ſame Perſon.

Come hither to me, thou and thou.

The Father and the Son walk together.

The Mother and the Daughter talk together.

Love and Majeſty dwell not together.

A Wife and a Whore ſhall be together in one houſe.

The King and Queen wiſh him to their Son-in-law.

Strength and Beauty are much deſired by every one.

The

The wind and the rain fight one with another.

The Hare and the Dog run apace.

War, and Famine, and Peſtilence, do ruinate Countries.

Righteouſneſs, and Peace, and Truth, do make Kingdoms happy.

Examples where one Nominative Caſe is of the firſt perſon, and another of the ſecond.

I and thou will go home together.

Thou and I will ſeek him out.

Let thee and me love our Father.

Thou and I ſhall be ſafe what ever come of it.

Neither thou, nor I, have either luck or money.

Both thou, and I, muſt give an account of our-ſelves unto God.

Nor thou, nor I, did any ſuch thing.

Examples where one Nominative Caſe is of the firſt perſon and another of the third.

I and my Son are in health.

My Mother and I, perſwaded my Father.

I and my man, kept the houſe.

My Father and I, drove the Sheep.

I and my houſe, will ſerve the Lord.

My Brother and I, go to the ſame School.

He and I, are diſputing here.

Examples where one Nominative Caſe, is of the ſecond perſon, and another of the third.

Thou and thy Mother miſs thy Father.

Thy Brother and thou are idle Boyes.

Art thou and Mary well?

Thy Boy and thou will get great booties.

Come thou and thy wife to my houſe.

Thy man and thou do plough in one field.

Thou and thy Maſter do ride in the ſame Coach together.

Thy Dog and thou, lie in the ſame bed.

† Yea, though no Conjunction Copulative be expreſſed

expreſſed between the foregoing Nominative Caſes, yet may the Verb be plural: as, Ter. *Dum ætas, metus, magiſter prohibebant.*

Wealth, honour, power, bewitch many men.

Vertue, goodneſs, charitie, are much deſpiſed in theſe dayes.

Beautie, health, ſtrength are wiſhed for by moſt men.

Follie, ſin, wickedneſs, are committed by all men.

† Yet this making the Verb to be plural when many Nominative Caſes ſingular goe before the Verb, is not alwayes obſerved in Authours, who ſometimes ſet a Verb ſingular with diverſe Nominative Caſes going before or after it, which Verb agrees in perſon with that Nominative Caſe that ſtands next it, whether before or after it, that is, in the ſame Comma with it. And this Conſtruction is that which the *Latines* call *Zeugma.*

¶ Zeugma eſt unius verbi viciniori reſpondentis, ad diverſa ſuppoſita reductio; ad unum quidem expreſſe; ad alterum verò per ſupplementum; ut, Cic. *Nihil te nocturnum præſidium palatii, nihil urbis vigilia, nihil timor populi, nihil concurſus bonorum omnium, nihil hic munitiſsimus habendi Senatus locus, nihil horum ora vultuſque moverunt.*

Mens & ratio & conſilium in ſenibus eſt. Cic. *Ego & Cicero meus flagitabit.* Cic. *Mihi & res & conditio placet.* Cic. *Egit pater & filius ut tibi ſponderem. Ego, & tu ſtudes. Ego dormio, & tu,* Dormio *ego, & tu: Studes tu, & ego. Quid ego, & populus deſideret, audi.* Hor. *Perſuaſit nox, amor, vinum.* Ter. *Et eôdem accedit ſervitus, ſudor, ſitis.* Plaut. merc. 4. 1.

† If it ſo fall out, that the Nominative Caſe that ſtands next the Verb is plural, then the Verb ſhall be plural: as in the example of *Zeugma* above.

This

This kind of Conſtruction ſeems to be nothing but an *Ellipſis*, or a not expreſſing of a Verb ſo manie times underſtood as there are Nominative Caſes expreſſed. As in the abovenamed example, with *præſidium* is to be underſtood *movit*; with *vigiliæ*, *moverunt*; with *timor*, *movit*; with *concurſus*; *movit*; with *locus*, *movit*; with *ora*, *moverunt*; and with *vultus*, *moverunt* So in *Ego, & tu ſtudes*, with *ego* is underſtood *ſtudeo*, and in *Dormio ego, & tu*: with *Tu* is underſtood *dormis*, &c.

† Sometimes when a Nominative Caſe hath another caſual word of the Ablative Caſe coupled to it by the Prepoſition *cum* in Latine, the following Verb is of the plural Number, as if it had two Nominative Caſes, with a Conjunction Copulative, between them, going before it: as, Virg. Rhemus *cũ fratre* Quirino *Jura dabant. Ego cum fratre ſumus candidi. Littora cum plauſu clamor ſuperaſque deorum Implevere domos.* Ovid. This Conſtruction is moſtly Poetical: but it may be exemplified in Engliſh.

The needle with the thred are loſt.

A Sword with a belt become a Souldier.

A Cow with a Calf went to the Market.

The man with his wife came to my Houſe.

The Ew with her Lamb play together.

The Father with his Son were beheaded on the ſame day.

† But this is not perpetual neither: for where a Nominative Caſe hath had another word coupled to it with *cum*, yet the Verb hath been of the ſingular Number: as, *Tu, quid ego & populus mecum deſideret, audi.* Hor. *Occiſus eſt cum liberis* M. Fulvius *Conſularis.* Cic. 1. Cat.

† Sometimes diverſe Nominative Caſes come together without a Conjunction copulative either expreſſed or underſtood betwixt them, as be-

belonging both, (or all, if they be more than two) to the same thing; and then, if the Nominative Cases be all of the singular Number, the Verb shall be of the singular Number also: as, Herodotus *homo fabulator Scripsit*-- *A. Gell. l.* 3. *c.* 20.

† This kind of Construction is called by Modern Grammarians *Appositon*. And the Substantives so put together, sometimes are of diverse Numbers; as *Urbs Athenæ*; *Turba luxuriosa proci*.

† In this Construction, if the Name of a Man, or any living Creature be the first Substantive in the Grammatical order of the words, and the other be the Name of some lifeless thing, then the Verb is to agree with the first Nominative Case; as, Tullíola *deliciæ nostræ tuum munusculum flagitat*. Cic. *Deliciæ verò tuæ noster Æsopus ejusmodi fuit, ut*---. i. e. Æsopus *deliciæ tuæ*. Cic. *In me turba ruunt luxuriosa proci*. i. e. *proci luxuriosa turba ruunt*. Ovid.

† But if the former Nominative Case be the Name of a thing *without life*, then will the Verb agree with that Nominative Case, which comes after in the Grammatical Order: as, Turgri *Civitas* Galliæ *fontem habet insignem*. Plin. *Oppidum* Latinorum Apiolæ [i. e. Apiolæ *oppidum* Latinorum] *captum à* Tarquinio *rege*. Id.

† In this kind of Construction between the Substantives so put together there is understood the Participle *ens*, or a Relative with a Verb Substantive: Herodotus *ens* or *qui est homo fabulator*; *Proci entes*, or *existentes*, or *qui sunt turba luxuriosa*.

Cicero *a man of great eloquence made Orations against* Antonius.

Alexander *King of* Macedonia *subdued the Eastern Countries of the World*.

Bucephalus *the Horse of King* Alexander, *would suffer no rider but his Master*.

The

The Five Churches *a Town in* Hungary *was taken by the* Turks *the same year.*

The City Hundred-Hills *is one of the chief Towns in* Transylvania.

The Three Taverns, *a Town in* Italy *is thirty three miles off from* Rome

¶ Verba infiniti modi pro nominativo accusativum ante se statuunt; ut, *Te rediisse incolumem gaudeo. Te fabulam agere volo.*

† When a Casual word comes betwixt two Verbs whereof the latter is the Infinitive Mood, the Casual word is to be made by the Accusative Case; as in Example

I bid thee go. I pray thee come. I intreated him to stay. I desired them to remember. I will cause you to be whipped. He forced us to run You make me to be exceeding angry. They know me to be an honest man. I know them to be very knaves. They report the Romans *to have gotten the upper hand. I know my Son to be in love.*

† But if the foregoing Verb be such a Verb as governs a Dative Case, then may that word which comes betwixt the two Verbs, be either the *Dative* Case as governed of the foregoing Verb, or the *Accusative* as governed of the following Infinitive Mood; as, *Licitum est tibi ex hac juventute generum deligere.* Cic. *Domino non licet ire tuo.* Ovid. *Non licet hominem esse sæpe ita ut vult.* Ter. *Neque servitio me exire licebat.* Virg. See the Treatise of *English Particles c.* 34. *r.* 21. *n.* 1.

¶ Resolvi potest hic modus per *quòd* & *ut*, ad hunc modum: *Quòd tu rediisti incolumis gaudeo. Ut tu fabulam agas volo.*

† The Infinitive Mood with his Accusative Case before it may be expressed by a Finite Mood with a Nominative Case before that, and *quòd* or *ut* with it, accordingly as the Construction requires: as,

I bid that thou be gone.

I

I pray that thou wouldest come. I intreated that he would stay. I desired that they would remember. I will cause that you be whipped. He forced that we ran. You do cause that I am exceeding angry. They know that I am an honest man. I know that they are very knaves. They report that the Romans have got the upper hand. I know that my Son is in love.

When the Variation is to be made by *quòd*, and when by *ut* : See the Treatise of *English Particles* c. 75. r. 3, 4. 8.

¶ Verbum inter duos Nominativos diversorum numerorum positum cum alterutro convenire potest : ut, *Ter. Amantium iræ amoris redintegratio est.* Ovid. *Quid enim nisi vota supersunt?* Id. *Pectora percussit, pectus quoque robora fiunt.* Virg. *---Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt.*

* When a Verb cometh between two Nominative Cases of divers Numbers, the Verb may indifferently accord with either of them, so that they be both of one person : as, *Amantium iræ*, &c.

† There is a twofold order of words, the one Natural or Grammatical, the other Artificial or Oratorial ;

Of the Natural order this may be an Example; *Nuptiæ sunt res honesta.*

Of the Artificial order this may be an Example; *Honesta res nuptiæ sunt.*

† A Verb placed between two Nominative Cases set according to Natural Order most usually agrees with the Forms : as, *Nuptiæ sunt res honesta.*

† But a Verb placed between two Nominative Cases, set according to Artificial Order more usually agrees with the latter : as, *Sanguis erant lachrymæ.*

† Yet sometimes when the words are set in the Natural Order, the Verb agrees with the latter : as, *Pecuniæ imperiique libido, sunt quæsi materiæ omnium malorum.* Sall.

† This I set down because

cause I see it alleadged as an instance of this Construction: but to me, two Nominatives Singular seem equal to one Plural, and so the Verb may be said to agree even here with the former.

† Sometimes when the words are set in the Artificial Order, the Verb agrees with the former: as, *Divitiæ sunt lege naturæ composita paupertas.*

† If both the Nominative Cases be placed before the Verb, then the Verb more usuallie agrees with the latter: as, *Amantium iræ amoris redintegratio est. Pectus robora sunt. Omnia pontus erat.*

† Yet when they are so set, sometimes the Verb is made to agree with the former: as, *Captivi præda militum fuerunt. Ossa lapis sunt. Gaudia principium nostri sunt* Phoce *doloris.*

† If both the Nominative Cases be set after the Verb, then the Verb usually agrees with that which stands next it. Cic. *in* Pison. *Aude nunc O furia, de tuo dicere, cujus fuit initium ludi compitales.*

* Those Examples, *Quid enim, nisi vota supersunt? Quid nisi secretæ læserunt* Phyllida *Sylvæ? Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt.* &c. Seem not to me to be proper examples to be alledged in this matter, though usually they be so. Because the Rule proceeds of one Verb between two Nominative Cases; and in them there are belonging to each Nominative Case his particular Verb, whereof one indeed by an Ellipsis is understood onlie, and the other expressed. as, *Quid enim supereſt, nisi vota supersunt. Quid enim læsit* Phyllida, *nisi secretæ Sylvæ læserunt? Nihil hic deest, nisi carmina desunt.* But he that will think otherwise shall not have me to contend with him about it.

This kind of Construction is hardlie imitable in English, in which in the

the Natural Order the Verb usually, if not alwayes, agrees with the foregoing Nominative Case.

† But in the Order Artificial we may make some exemplification of it: as *The cause of woes are warres.*

Blood were her tears.

The Souldiers booty are the Captives

¶ Impersonalia præcedentem Nominativum non habent: ut, *Tædet me vitæ Pertæsum est conjugii.*

† That is, when Verbs are put impersonally, there is no Nominative case expressed wherewith they agree. But yet there is one understood, which is not easie for everie one to conceive of: As, when it is said, *Tædet me vitæ. Pertæsum est conjugii.* Yet this may be supplied thus: *Vitæ tædium tædet me. Tædium conjugii pertæsum est a me.* The not understanding what Nominative Case to put to these Verbs, made some call them Impersonalls: though there be no such Verbs as Impersonals unless in the Infinitive Mood, where all are Impersonalls. But this by the by.

† As to the translating of those Englishes for which the Verbs accounted such are the Latines, these Directions may be taken notice of.

† If the English of a Verb Impersonal have nothing but the ordinary sign of its Impersonalitie [*it*] or [*there*] before it, then no further care need be taken, but to translate according to rule that which follows it, and as it follows: as, It irks me of life, *Tædet me vitæ.* There began to be no agreement, *Cœperat non convenire.* It behoves me to depart. It concerns me to speak. There can be no pleasant living there.

† If the English of a Verb Impersonal have a Casual word before it, it is to be considered, what case the Latine Impersonal governs after it,

and into that Case is the casual word that comes before it to be put: as, *I must write.* Me oportet scribere. *Thou mayst read.* Tibi licet legere. *They ought to be thankful.*

Travellours they say *may lie by Authority.*

When Kings command, Subjects must obey.

Schollars ought to remember and requite their Teachers.

But for the translating of *Must* or *Ought*, See the Treatise of English Particles. ch. 55. & 68.

¶ Nomen multitudinis singulare quandoque verbo plurali jungitur, Ut, Pars abiêre.

† A Noun of multitude is such a word, as in the Singular Number signifies many things collected into one; as a heap &c. Whence it is also called a Noun Collective.

To such Nouns though of the Singular Number Authors have sometimes joyned a Verb plural; as *Pars abiêre.*

† And sometimes a Verb Singular: as, *Pars stupet.* Virg.

† In the Singular Verb they had respect unto the *word*: in the Plural they had respect unto the *things* signified by that word.

† We may exemplifie that kind of Construction perhaps thus.

Part became Birds, part were turned into beasts. Part held the Boat when they were ducked into the Water. Part cut them into Cantells.

Abundance of Men are destroyed with gluttony. A power of Souldiers rushed into the Town. A multitude of Fishes are daily taken in that River.

The Parliament have taken it into Consideration. The Councill stay for the comming of the King. The People are mad when Taxes are laid.

Let all the Company of us goe.

But in these it will not be good to dare in our use beyond the warranty of Example.

† A

† A Partitive sometimes hath the Construction of a Collective, and being of the Singular Number hath a Verb plurall joyned to it: as *Uterque deluduntur dolis.* Plaut, *Aperite aliquis ostium.* Ter. *In suas quisque ædes regressi,* Ter.

Bring me some Beer, some bodie. They got every Man upon his own horse. They were both sore scared at the sight.

Some bodie make me a Fire here quickly. We suffer everie one his misfortunes. They died both on one and the same day.

Run somebodie and fetch the Nurse. Everie Man take your swords in your hands. Both of them have the same thoughts of you.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

Concordantia Substantivi & Adjectivi.

¶ Adjectivum cum Substantivo, genere, Numero & Casu consentit: ut Juven. *Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima Cygno.*

¶ Ad eundem modum Participia & Pronomina Substantivis adnectuntur: Ovid. *Donec eris felix multos numerabis amicos. Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes.* Senec. *Non hoc primùm pectora vulnus mea senserunt; graviora tuli.*

* The Adjective, whether it be Noun, Pronoun or Participle, agreeth with his Substantive in Case, Gender, and Number: as *Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur* A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter. *Homo armatus.* A man armed. *Ager colendus*

lendus, A Felid to be tilled. *Hic Vir*, this Man. *Meus herus est*, It is my Master.

English Examples.

(I.) Where the Adjective comes together with the Substantive set next after it:

A good Man is a wise Man; and an evil Man is a foolish Man.

A Black Swan is a rare bird; and a white crow is a strange sight.

The evil life of a good Preacher brings great disgrace to sound Doctrine.

Evil words corrupt good manners: and evil manners destroy great Kingdomes.

Soft fire makes sweet malt: and sweet malt makes strong Ale.

A tall Man with a long neck in a white doublet, killed two Sparrows sitting on a high house with one stone.

The unimelie death of a loving Husband is a bitter fountain of much grief to a Kind Wife.

The eager contention of disagreeing Princes, is the sad destruction of flourishing States.

My Son loves thy Daughter: and thy Daughter is in love with my Son.

Our Lad is gone to your house: and your house is quite gone to decay.

Your Master is gone with his Wife to his garden; and our Children with their hands pluck up fine flowers.

She views her wrinkled face in a broken glass, and washeth her yellow Teeth with red wine.

He holds three Eggs in one hand: and reads a long letter in a little space.

When Civil warrs cease, then expect happy times: and when happy times return, then expect Civil warres.

(II.) Where the Adjective comes together with the Substantive set next before it

A House full of gold coyned, would not make a Miser rich.

A Temple adorned with Pictures innumerable, was

to

to be ſeen on a hills top.

A Tongue ſpeaking things ſhamefull bringeth to the ſpeaker things harmfull.

Water flowing from a Fountain enclоſed, ranne in a channel newly digged.

A Wife bemoaning a Husband dead, ſate beſides children weeping.

A Traitor readie to ſhed blood Royal, deſerves to be cut off by a death untimely.

A Conſcience wounded is a burden inſupportable.

Land fruitfull and well tilled; brings a crop plentiful in a year ſeaſonable.

(III.) Where the Adjective is parted from his Subſtantive comming before it.

A Kingdome is happy when peace is preſerved carefully, and juſtice adminiſtred duly.

The Man went away ſorrowful, when he ſaw that a woman lay weeping upon the ground.

Wiſedom is accounted vain, where vice is found to be gainfull.

The Shepherd is ſaid to be diligent, when the flock is thriving.

Where the Teacher is skilful and painfull, there the profiting of the Learner is hopefull.

IV.) Where the Adjective is parted from his Substantive comming after it.

Happie are the times, when truth and peace doe flouriſh.

Glorious in all Ages will be a wiſe, righteous and valiant King.

Hatefull is the name, woful is the life, and fearful is the death of a Traitor.

Fair is thought the child by the fond Mother

Terrible, Men ſay, will be the Sentence of the laſt judgement.

Unquencheable, it is believed, ſhall the fire of Hell be.

Great is the peace of an undefiled Conſcience.

Mine is the Comfort, thine will be the Glory of deeds well done.

Adjectives of the Comparative Degree with their Substantives.

Yellow Gold is more pretious than white silver.

Despised vertue is more chuseable, than honoured vice.

Cicero *was eloquenter than* Cato: *but* Cato *was constanter than* Cicero.

Of the two Kingdoms Spain *is the larger, but* France *is the richer.*

Unjust Peace is better than a just Warr: and War abroad is more desireable than War at home.

A little with quietness is more wishable than a great deal with vexation.

The Sea is deeper than a Bucket, and Eternity is longer than Time.

Adiectives of the Superlative Degrée with their Substantives.

The shortest Day hath the longest Night.

The holiest Life may expect the happiest Death: and the best Work hope for the biggest reward.

The learnedst Clerks are not always the wisest men: nor are the best Preachers evermore the holiest Christians.

Cicero *was the most eloquent of pleaders: but* Cæsar *was the most prudent of Commanders.*

Solomon *was the wisest Kings; and* Hercules *was the strongest of men.*

Socrates *was accounted the wisest of Philosophers; and* Alexander *the most fortunate of Conquerours.*

Aristides *was the justest among the* Grecians; *and* Crassus *the richest among the* Romans

Examples where several Substantives Singular with a Conjunction Copulative expressed or understood comming between them have an Adjective Plural: which kind of Construction is called *Syllepsis.*

¶ Copulatum per conjunctionem *Et, nec, neque,* & *cum* pro *Et* acceptum, est pluralis numeri: ac proindè Adjectivum exigit plurale. Quod qui-

quidem Adjectivum cum digniore Substantivo genere quadrabit: ut, *Ego & mater miseri perimus.*

¶ Dignius autem est Masculinum quàm Femininum aut Neutrum: & dignius Femininum quàm Neutrum; ut, *Rex & Regina beati. Chalybs & aurum sunt in fornace probati. Hinc per vim leges & plebiscita coactæ.*

* Many Substantives Singular with a Conjunction Copulative comming between them will have an Adjective Plural, which Adjective shall agree with the Substantive of the most worthy Gender: as *Rex & Regina beati.* The King and the Queen are blessed.

* Where note, that the Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter.

Your Father and Mother are dead.

Mars *and* Venus *were taken naked by* Vulcan *in a net.*

My Brother and Sister were brought alive and safe to shore.

The King and Queen are walked abroad arrayed in Royall robes.

He hath made his Wife and Child miserable by his naughtiness.

Both my horse and mare are white.

There lay Antonie *and* Cleopatra *drunk.* Pyramus *and* Thisbe *lie here buried in one Tomb.*

† So it is when one Substantive is coupled to another by the Prepositi-on *with* noting company or consociation: ut, *Ego cum matre sumus candidi.*

He thrust the Mother with the Son into the prison to be killed with hunger.

The King with the Queen rode crowned through the City.

He found the man with the woman naked in bed.

He took the dam with her young alive in the nest.

There goes Wife with Husband clothed in scarlet.

Venus *with* Mars *ran away ashamed.*

† Yet ſometimes in this kind of Conſtruction, the Adjective as well as the Verb is of the Singular number: Cic. i. Catil. *Occiſus eſt cum liberis M. Fulvius conſularis.*

¶ At cum Subſtantiva res inanimatas ſignificant, Adjectivum in neutro genere uſitatius ponitur. ut Sal. *Ira & egritudo permiſta ſunt. Virga tua & baculus tuus ipſa me conſolata ſunt.*

* But in things not apt to have life the Neuter Gender is moſt worthy.

Honor [decus] *and glorie* [gloria] *are placed before our eyes.*

Nor Kingdome nor Crown are to be compared to a good Conſcience.

Neither Peace nor right [jus] *are lovelie in the eyes of Evil men.*

Both Law and Goſpel are contrary unto evil doings.

Counſel and Reaſon are to be heard before we proceed to Action.

Warre and bloodſhed [cædes] *are hateful to good men.*

* Yea in ſuch Caſe though the Subſtantives be of the Maſculine or Feminine Gender, and none of them of the Neuter, yet may the Adjective be put in the Neuter Gender: as Cic. 1 Off. *Pulchritudinem, conſtantiam, ordinem in conſiliis fa. Eliſque conſervanda putat* See Saturn. Mercur. major l. 5. c. 7.

Righteouſneſs and peace have kiſſed each other.

Death and Life are placed in the power of the Tongue.

Wind and Tide are contrary to our journey.

Bread and drink are more neceſſarie unto life than gold or ſilver.

Wind and rain are hurtful unto ripe fruits.

Fire and ſnow are contrary to each other.

† Yet this is not always obſerved in Authors: for Quintilian l. 1. c. 10. *Grammatice quondam ac Muſice junctæ fuerunt.*

No

No more than the former exception was by *Lucan*: who ſaid. *Hinc leges & plebiſcita coactæ.* which expreſſion Mr. *Farnaby* calls *Præpoſterum Zeugma.* So nor by *Cicero*, when pro Planc. he ſaid, *Amor tuus & judicium tuum de me, multum mihi dignitatis eſt allaturus.*

† But if one of the Subſtantives ſignifie a thing with life, and the other ſignifie a thing without life, the Adjective ſhall agree with the Subſtantive that ſignifies the thing with life.

Jane fac æternos pacem paciſque miniſtros. Ovid

Omnia tuta vides: claſſem ſocioſque receptos. Virg. 1 Æn.

Our Founder and foundation are honourable in the ſight of all wiſe men.

The Author and work were both condemned to the flames.

The Land and the Inhabitants are alike unmanured and barbarous, and inhoſpitable.

Both the Orator and his Oration were to be commended.

Both the Hen and egge were white.

The Sheep and ſheepfold are both ſafe.

† And yet Statius Theb. 7. ſaid *Jura fidem & ſuperos unâ calcata ruinâ.*

† Sometimes in Latine the Adjective, that hath relation unto two Subſtantives, agrees with that Subſtantive both for Gender, Number and Caſe that ſtands next to it whether before or after it. And this kind of conſtruction is called *Zeugma.*

¶ Zeugma eſt unius adjectivi viciniori reſpondentis ad diverſa ſuppoſita reductio, ad unum quidem expreſſè, ad alterum verò per ſupplementum.

† Sometimes the Adjective agrees with that Subſtantive that ſtands next before it: as *Et genus & virtus, niſi cum re vilior alga eſt. Locus & tempus conſtitutum eſt. Maritus & uxor irata eſt.*

† Sometimes with that

that

that ſtands next after it: as *Caper tibi ſalvus & hœdi. Iratus eſt maritus & uxor.*

† Sometimes that Adjective, which ſhould be placed between two Subſtantives (which are not coupled together by any Conjunction) in the Natural Order, is in the Artificial Order ſet after them both, and made to agree with the latter of them, though it were, if ſet in the Natural Order, to agree with the former of them: as *Non omnis error ſtultitia dicenda eſt. Paupertas mihi onus viſum eſt grave. Gens univerſa Veneti appellati.*

† Sometimes in Latine the Adjective agrees not with the Subſtantive, that is expreſſed, but with ſome other that is underſtood by it, or with it. And this kind of Conſtruction is called by ſome *Syntheſis.*

Syntheſis eſt oratio, congrua ſenſu, non voce: ut, *Gens armati.*

The diſagreement betwixt the Subſtantive and the Adjective is ſometimes *onlie in Gender*; as *Anſer fœta.* i. e. *avis. Elephantus gravida.* i. e. *beſtia. Centauro in magna.* i. e. *navi. Tranſtulit in Eunuchum ſuam.* i. e. *fabulam. Illum ſenium* [i. e. *ſenem*] *dii perdant. Nuper honoratos ſummo mea vulnera* [i. e. *homines qui me vulnerant*] *Cœlo videritis. Capita conjurationis trucidati*, i. e. *homines qui fuerunt capita conjurationis. Duo millia crucibus affixi.* i. e. *homines ad duo millia ſunt affixi*

† Sometimes the diſagrement betwixt the Subſtantive & the Adjective is both in *Gender* & *Number*: as, *Gens armati* i. e. *homines. Pars merſi* (i. e. *nautæ*) *tenuere ratem. Pars & certare parati.* i. e. *homines. Hic manus ob patrium pugnando vulnera paſſi*, i. e. *milites. Maxima pars vulnerati*, i. e. *homines.*

† Theſe and the like irregularities we cannot exemplifie in Engliſh, becauſe our Adjectives vary neither in gender, nor termination. The only way that I apprehend of exemplifying them, is to frame

frame Latine Examples, and then to engliſh them, and by the engliſhes of the Subſtantive and Adjective, that are to diſagree to ſet in brackets [ ] the Latine words for them: as,

Part [pars] *were ready* [paratus] *to yield, though part were ſtill fighting ſtoutly.*

More then forty names [nomen *were aſſembled* [congregatus] *unto that place.*

† Though it matters not much if they be not imitated at all; their being ſet and taught in Grammar being only that they may be known, not that they may be followed.

¶ Aliquando oratio ſupplet locum ſubſtantivi; ut, *Audito regem Doroberniam proficiſci.*

To riſe betime in the morning is very wholſome: and to go to bed early is very profitable; as to ſit up late at night is exceeding waſteful.

To ſleep too much is hurtful to the brain: and to drink too oft is unhealthfull for the body.

That he comes ſo often to my houſe is delightful to me: and that I walk ſo much abroad is healthful for me.

That I live ſo long is troubleſome to them: and that you live ſo well is pleaſant to me.

That good men ſerve God is hateful to evil men: and that evil men ſerve the Devil is troubleſome to good men.

It is ſweet to ſee a young man do as he ſhould.

It is profitable to ſpare needleſs coſt.

It is eaſie to find a fault in another mans life.

It is Chriſtian to pardon a repenting offender.

To do well and be evil ſpoken of is Kinglike.

To be alwayes beginning to live, is fooliſh.

To fear to touch the Lords anointed is ſafe.

† Note, when a ſpeech, clauſe, part of, or word in a ſpeech, which is not a a Noun or Pronoun, but ſome word uſed (πτωτῶς, as they ſpeak) to ſignifie it ſelf only, and not ſome other

other thing by it; or an infinitive mood of a Verb, or an Adverb, or the like, answers to the question *who* or *what*, made by an Adjective, and so stands in the stead of a substantive to it, then the adjective referring to it shall be the neuter gender; as,

Audito regem Doroberniam proficisci. Finire laborem incipias, parto quod avebas, Hor. *Scire tuum nihil est.* Pers. *Et nostrum illud vivere triste aspexi. Velle suum cuique est*, Id. *Sæpe vale dicto*, Ovid. *Quando erit illud* cras?

Take your last farewel *of him.*

You have a long come *with you.*

† And if two clauses, *&c.* be referred to in one Adjective, then that Adjective shall be the plural number, as if they were two nouns of the neuter Gender, that were referred unto, as,

To sleep much and drink often are hurtful to the body.

Building of houses, and marrying of children are wastful to the estate.

To rise betime and study hard are conducible unto your profiting in learning.

To ly long before you rise, and to loiter much when you are up, are ill for you.

† Sometimes in Latine an Adjective is found in a sentence having no substantive at all expressed for it, to agree with all, yet put in that gender, that the substantive is of, which it refers unto, being understood, though it be not expressed; as, *Vesci ferina*, i.e. *carne. Laborare tertianâ*, i.e. *febre. Rem repetundarum.* sc. *pecuniarum. Lavari calidâ*, sc. *aqua. Donari civicâ*, sc. *coronâ. In Tusculano*, sc. *prædio. Tenere primas*, sc. *partes. Eâdem feceris*, sc. *operâ.*

And so we speak sometimes in English.

You may do it all under one sc. labour. *And then shall that wicked* [so. man] *be destroyed*, 2 Thes. 2. 8. *The wise* [sc. man] *shall inherit glory*, Prov. 3. 35. *Rejoyce in the Lord, O ye righteous* [i.e. men] Psal.

He went away the fourth of June.

I rose at four in the morning.

I will be here again by twelve at noon

There were five against four.

The gray beat the black twelve score at least.

Let the dead bury their dead.

The wise and good are to preferred before the rich and fair

† Note when *Man* in english, or *Homo* in latine is the word referred to, then the adjective is to be of the masculine gender: as, *Fortes creantur fortibus, & boni bonis. Doctus indocto quid præstat? quod cæco videns.*

† But when *Thing* in english, or *Negotium, Opus, Quid*, or *Quiddam*, or some such like word in latine is the word referred unto, then the adjective is to be of the neuter gender: as, *Triste lupus stabulis*, i. e. *quid triste. Mors omnium extremum est*, i. e. *res extrema. Est vindicta bonum vitâ jucundius ipsâ. Dulce satis humor. Varium & mutabile semper fœmina.*

So we say in English, *To hit the white*, i.e. *white thing.*

Life is a good to be desired.

Sin is an evil to be feared.

† Sometimes in latine an adjective put substantively becomes the substantive to an adjective; as, *Amicus certus in re certâ cernitur. Fortunate senex*, Virg. *Crudelem medicum intemperans æger fecit. Tempus erit quo prima quies mortalibus ægris incipit*, Virg.

Fallax serenum Quantum est in rebus inane, Pers. *Magnum per inane*, Virg. *Bonum vitâ jucundius ipsâ*, Juven.

So we say in English. *A deep hollow. My dear. The least evil is not to be done for the obtaining of the greatest good.*

† Sometimes in latine the substantive is of the Genitive case, when the adjective is of another case. But that is either.

1. First, when the adjective is put substantively

ly in the Neuter Gender, and then the Genitive case is the Genitive case of possession: as,

Paululum pecuniæ, Hoc Noctis. Id manticæ. Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei. Libyæ extrema. Ne id quidem lepôris habuerunt. Huic aliud mercedis erit. Hoc est signi. Non minus auxilii. Proponit mihi inania nobilitatis. Per diversa gentium terrarumque volitabat. Incerta belli. Telluris operta. Strata viarum.

So we say in Engiish,

The white of hens dung.
The black of an eie, or bean
The gray of the morning.
In the dead of the night.
The cool of the day.

2. Or Secondly, when the adjective referres to another case of the same word which is expressed with it in the Genitive case, and to be supplied in the case of the adjective: and then the Genitive is the case of Partition: as,

Nigræ lanarum nullum colorem bibunt, Plin. i. e. *E numero lanarum lanæ nigræ nullum bibunt colorem. Canum degeneres*, [i. e. *E numero canum canes degeneres*] *caudam sub alvum retrahunt.*

Of the hands the right is the stronger.

Of the fingers the middlemost is the longest.

Of wines the old are best.

Of friends the old are most to be esteemed of.

Of books new are most inquired after.

Of eggs the long bring cocks, the round hens.

Of Scholars the learnedest are not alwayes the wisest.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

Concordantia Relativi & Antecedentis.

* When ye have a Relative, ask the question *who* or *what*? and the word that answers to the question

tion shall be the Antecedent to it.

The Antecedent most commonly is a word that goeth before the Relative and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The Antecedent is sometimes rehearsed again expressly with the Relative in the same clause that it is in: as

Cum viderem ex eâ parte homines, cujus partis nos vel principes numerabamur. Cic.

Diem scito esse nullum, quo die non dico pro reo. Cic.

Legem promulgaverat, quâ lege regnum Jubæ publicaverat. Cæs.

So in English.

I have a horse, which horse is twenty years old.

He bought a house, of which house his Grandfather had been the owner.

Thou hast a friend, to which friend thou mayst commit all thy secrets.

A certain Bird was sitting on a tree, which Bird one felled thence with a stone.

I have a Dog, than which Dog no Lion is more fierce.

† And when the Antecedent is rehearsed together with the Relative, it is of the same Case also, as well as of the same Gender, and Number, and Person that the Antecedent is of: as in the forenamed Examples.

But mostly the Antecedent is not set together in the same clause with the Relative, but in another clause before it distant from it: and then as it sometimes happens to be of the same Case with it, so manie times it differs in case from it.

¶ Relativum cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero, & personâ: ut *Vir bonus est quis? Qui consulta patrum, qui leges juraque servat.*

* The Relative agreeth with his Antecedent in gender, number, and person: as, *Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur*, That man is wise that speaketh few things or words.

En-

English Examples.

Thou hateſt me without a cauſe, who am thy beſt friend in the world

I love thee dearly, who yet art moſt unkind to me.

Deſpiſeſt thou me, who am the Queen of Beauties?

He married his daughter, whom he had ſo dearly loved, to an unworthy perſon.

They perſecute us innocent men, who have done good to them.

We Fathers love you children, who are obedient unto us.

Husbands love us wives, who are kind to them.

We Men honour you Women, who adorn your ſelves with vertue and modeſtie.

I cannot but love that man dearly, who hath been kind to me in my adverſitie.

I cannot but keep that Mare well, which hath ſaved me in time of danger.

I cannot but think that Kingdom happie, which is governed by a juſt and merciful King.

Happy are thoſe Kings whom Subjects love, and enemies fear.

Miſerable are theſe countries, which Warr and Famine do vex and waſte.

Glorious are thoſe times in which Peace and Truth do flouriſh.

Syntheſis.

† Yet in Latine Authors ſome diſagreements are betwixt the Relative and his Antecedent.

(1) In Perſon: as, *Quanquam quicum loquor? Cum uno fortiſſimo viro, qui poſteaquam forum attigiſti, nihil feciſti, &c.* Cic. Fam. l. 15. Ep. 16.

But here the Relative *qui* is referred for the perſon of it, unto *Tu* underſtood by a Syntheſis, as if it had been ſaid, *Cum te uno fortiſſimo viro, qui* —

2 In Gender: as, *Ubi illic ſcelus eſt, qui me perdidit?* Ter. And. Here alſo the Relative *qui* referrs for Gender unto *homo* by a Syntheſis underſtood in *Scelus*, as if it had been ſaid, *Ubi ille ſceleſtus homo eſt, qui Qui habet ſalem, quod in te eſt.*

est, Ter. Eun. Where *quod* referres for Gender, not to *falem* the masculine gender, but unto *sal*, or rather *sale* of the neuter gender signifying the same thing with *sal* of the masculine.

Unless the clause *habere salem* may be conceived to be the Antecedent to *quod*; which perhaps is the more probable.

Festivum caput, qui omnia sibi posthabenda putavit esse præ meo commodo. Ter. Ad.

(3) In number; as, *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt* (here *quæ* refers to *tempora* understood) Cic. pro Mil. *Quo uno vincebamur à victa Græcia, id ereptum est illis*, Csc. in Brut. Here also *illis* refers unto *Græcis* understood.

¶ Nec unica vox solùm, sed interdum etiam oratio ponitur pro Antecedente,

* Sometime the Relative hath for his Antecedent the whole reason, that goeth before him, and then he shall be put in the neuter gender and singular number: as *In tempore ad eam veni, quod omnium rerum est primum.* I came to her in season, which is the chiefest thing of all.

English Examples.

Now adays one neighbour envyeth another, which is an ugly thing.

The two brothers love one another very dearly, which is very rare.

You love to lie long in bed in the morning, which is ill for your health.

I read much by candlelight, which is hurtful to my eyes.

It is my care to keep a good conscience, and that is comfortable to me.

They pamper their bellies too much, and that wastes their estate.

I am commanded not to stir from hence, and that keeps me here still.

I am busie in writing a book, and that keeps me from going abroad.

SYLLEPSIS.

¶ Copulatum per conjunctionem *Et, nec, neque*, & *cum*, pro *&* acceptum,

est pluralis numeri: ac proinde relativum exigit plurale.

* Many Antecedents singular having a conjunction copulative between them, will have a Relative plural.

† If the two or more Antecedents singular that come with a conjunction copulative betwixt them before the Relative, be both of the neuter gender, then shall the Relative be of the neuter gender also, as well as of the Plural number; as, *Sceptrum & diadema quæ tu mihi prædicas, inania sunt.*

* Also if the Relative be referred to two clauses or more, then shall the Relative be put in the plural number, and *neuter gender*: as, *Tu multum dormis & sæpe potas, quæ ambo sunt corpori inimica. Thou sleepest much and drinkest often, both which things are naught for the body. Thou playest oft and studiest seldome, which both things are ill for the wit. He is long from home and idle at home, both which things are bad for the estate. We talk much and work little, both which things are unprofitable to Husbandmen?*

† But if there be any difference in the gender of the Antecedents then *in things apt to have life* the Relative shall agree with the Antecedent of the most worthy gender: as, *Rex & regina, quos tu immortales prædicas, mortales sunt.*

Your brother and sister, whom some reported to be dead, are alive & in health.

Is his man and his maid come again, who were gone away.

The cock and hen, which you gave me, are stolen from me.

That Lord and Lady whom you so much honour, are much my friends.

Did you know that Tinker and his Trul, which were hanged the other day for murder?

I have that horse and mare still, which my father left me when he died.

The man with the woman, which you saw alive yester-

yesterday, are dead to day.

The Boy with the girle, which had lost their father, have found him now.

The wench with the fellow, that were run away, are come again.

The Cow with the Calf, which went to the fair, were sold for little when they came there.

! But *in things not apt to have life*, the neuter gender is most worthy: so that if either of the Antecedents be of the neuter gender, the Relative shall be of the neuter gender: as, *Imperium & dignitas quæ petiisti.*

That civil war and homebred discord, which were so pleasing to evil men, now (thanks be to God) are at an end.

In one year he ruined a Kingdome and Country, which his Ancestors had many years preserved in a flourishing condition

Have you brought the milk and cheese, which I bad you bring?

Shew me the ink and paper, which you bought you yesterday.

* Yea and in such case (that is, when the Antecedents signifie things without life) though the Antecedents be all of the masculine, or of the feminine gender, and none of them of the neuter, yet may the Relative be put in the neuter gender: as, Cic. *Quid est inconstantiâ, mobilitate, atque levitate, quæ vitæ nostræ mala solent inferre maxima, turpius? Virga tua & baculus tuus ipsa me consolata sunt.*

Hence probably, *Gel. l. 1. c. 14. Et memoratis multis magnisque rebus, quæ benè ac benevole fecisset.* becaus the Relative referred to things without life spoken of before, or perhaps to the word *res* not as expressed before the Relative, but as understood with the Relative.

When night and darkness, which had hindred the fight, were ended.

He patiently endured thirst, and rest, and abstinence, from meat [media] which were commanded him.

He despised the **honour**, *and glory, and mony, which were offered to him to tempt him to revolt from the King.*

† But it is not necessary that the Relative always must be of the neuter gender, when the substantives going before signifie things without life; for Cic. 2. Offic. 1. said, *Aut hæc ars est aut nulla omnino per quam eas assequamur.* The Antecedents were, *oblectatio animi* and *ratio constantiæ.*

† If one of the antecedents signifie *a thing with life*, and the other *a thing without life*, the Relative shall rather agree with that substantive that signifies the thing with life.

Have you found your horse and saddle, which you had lost.

I brought you both bird and egge, which I found in the nest.

† Yet this is not necessary alwayes: for Ovid. said, *Classe viriisque potens per quæ nova bella gerantur*, i. e. *per quas res.*

† Yea, when things with life are considered *ut res possessa* (saith *Rhenius*) sometimes the Relative shall be the neuter gender: as, Ter. Eun. 3. 2. 27. *Atque hæc qui misit non sibi soli postulat te vivere.* The substantives referred to in the Relative *hæc*, are *Eunuchus*, and *ancilla*; unless it be said, that *munera* or *dona* is referred to therein.

¶ Relativum inter duo Antecedentia diversorum generum collocatum, nunc cum priore convenit: ut, Val. Max. *Senatus assiduam stationem eo loci peragebat, qui hodie senaculum appellatur. Non procul ab eo flumine, quod Salliam vocant.* Cicer. *Propius à terra Jovis stella fertur, quæ Phaeton dicitur*

Ovid. *Unus erat toto naturæ vultus in orbe quem dixere Chaos.* Cæs. 1. B. G. *Natii portum, qui appellatur Nymphæum.* Plin. l. 18. *Sidere illo, quod caniculam appellamus.* Suet. in Aug. *Locus quem Syracusas vocabat.* Liv. 6. l. 8. Mac. *Sacrificium fecit in*

eo

eo loco, quem Pyram appellant.

¶ Nunc cum posteriore: ut, *Homines tuentur illum globum, quæ terra dicitur. Est locus in carcere quod* Tullianum *appellatur. In coitu lunæ, quod interlunium vocant. Hisque animus datus est ex illis sempiternis ignibus, quæ sidera & stellas vocatis.* Cic. Som. Scip, *Animal plenum consilii, quem hominem vocamus.* Cic. *Ad eum locum, quæ Pharsalia appellatur.* Cæs. 3. bel. c. *Tunc consilia conjuncta, quas urbes dicemus.* Cic. pro Sextio.

* When a Relative cometh between two Substantives of diverse Genders it may indifferently accord with either of them as, *Avis quæ passer appellatur.* The Bird which is called a Sparrow. Yea though the Substantives be of diverse Numbers also: as, *Estne ea Lutetia, quam nos Parisios dicimus?* Is not that called *Lutetia*, that we call *Paris?* Or else, *Estne ea* Lutetia, *quos non Parisios dicimus?*

This Construction we cannot exemplifie in English, because our Relatives do not varie their Genders and Terminations: yet I set these Examples for Translation, in which the Relative may be made as agreeing either with the former, or latter Substantive.

That sometime flourishing Kingdom, which ye call England, *hath of late been much spoiled by Civil warrs.*

That reasonable creature, whom we call man, doth many an unreasonable thing.

The Battel was fought in that place which they call the Pharsalian *fields.*

He was born in the Town, which is called Sulmo.

Those Heavenly Fires, which Men call Starrs, doe shine brighrest, when the night is darkest.

¶ Aliquando Relativum, (aliquando & nomen Adjectivum) respondet Primitivo quod

in Poſſeſſivo ſubintelligitur: ut Ter. *Omnes omnia bona dicere & laudare fortunas meas, qui filium haberem, tali ingenio præditum.*

Ovid. *Noſtros vidiſti flentis ocellos.* Ter. *Id meâ minime refert, qui ſum natu maximus.* Cic. *Veſtrâ enim qui cum ſummâ elegantiâ atque integritate vixiſtis, hoc maxime intereſt.* Cic. *Tuum hominis ſimplicis pectus vidimus.*

English Examples.

Hear my voice, who crie to thee.

Mine is the better cauſe, who have not taken up contrary armes.

Nor doeſt thou read my words, who am removed far off.

It is no concernment of thine, who art the Youngeſt.

I love not to ſee thy face, who haſt ſlaundered me behind my back.

Heavy will be thy damnation, that pretendeſt godlineſs, and practiceſt wickedneſs.

I much commend his wit, who firſt invented clocks.

There is no truſt to be given to his words that thinketh one thing, and ſpeaketh another.

Grant our requeſt, who flie to thee for ſuccour.

Take pitie on our condition, who ſuffer moſt baſe things.

I admire at your folly, who waſh a Blackmore.

This is your great concernment who have lived with much handſomeneſs and uprightneſs.

No body regarded my words calling for help.

Every one lamented his death circumvented by treacherous Rebels.

He waſhed our ſtripes miſerably torne with ſcourges.

You are of the Siſyphian *breed, as very a thief and cheat as he.*

¶ Quoties nullus Nominativus interſeritur inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus: ut. Boet. *Felix qui potuit boni fontem vicere lucidum.*

* When

* When there cometh no Nominative Caſe between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative ſhall be the Nominative Caſe to the Verb: as, *Miſer eſt qui nummos admiratur:* Wretched is that Perſon which is in love with mony.

Engliſh Examples.

Wiſe is the child, which knoweth his own Father.

Rich is the man, that is content with his Eſtate.

Not he who hath little, but he who coveteth more, is a poor man.

Will you contend with me, who have overthrown all that have oppoſed me?

He is to blame to deſpiſe thee, who art a better man then himſelf.

Do no wrong to him, that offers none to thee.

It is a folly for them to flatter us, who know them to be Knaves.

They cannot but dearly love you, who are ſo kind to them.

We ought to be grateful to them, who are bountiful to us.

I found by them, who are intimate with him, what his deſign was.

It is not fit that I, who have forced him to labour, ſhould be idle myſelf.

What young man is that, that looks on us ſo earneſtly?

Is the houſe built up again, that was lately burned down?

Is that Kingdom now deſtroyed, which a while agoe was in ſo flouriſhing a condition?

Are the Soldiers gone away that quartered at your houſe?

Have you found your Mares, that were gone aſtray?

The Warrs, that are not juſt, ſhould not be waged.

The Peace, that is juſt, ought not to be broken.

¶ At ſi Nominativus Relativo & Verbo interponatur, Relativum regitur à Verbo, aut ab alia dictione quæ cum Verbo in Oratione locatur.

(I) A Verbo.

* But when there cometh a Nominative Caſe

between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative ſhall be ſuch Caſe as the Verb will have after him: as, *Gratia ab officio, quod mora tardat, abeſt. Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.* Happy is he, whom other mens harmes do make to beware.

Engliſh Examples.

Do you diſpraiſe him, whom all men do commend?

You love that, which I do hate: and I hate that, which you do love.

It becomes us to raiſe up thoſe, whom Fortune hath caſt down.

I fear that I ſhall never be able to repay the courteſies, which you have ſhewed me.

Old Men remember all things, which they regard: and Young Men long for thoſe things, which they like.

Is he acquitted of the theft, of which he was accuſed?

He hath ſpent the mony, which he eſteemed ſo little of.

Hath he cleared himſelf of the crime of covetouſneſs, whereof many did accuſe him?

It is fit, we amend thoſe faults, whereof we have been admoniſhed.

Have you received my Letters from the man, to whom I gave them?

The man told me it whom you ſaid it to.

I have payed the mony to the man, to whom I owed it.

Take heed what you ſay, and whom you ſay it to.

I have one to commend me, and him one whom all do not pleaſe.

2. Aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum Verbo in Oratione locatur.

* Yet here is to be underſtood and noted, that the Relative is not always governed of the Verb, that he cometh [next] before, but ſometime of the Infinitive Mood of another Verb], that cometh after the Verb: as, *Quibus voluiſti me gratias agere, egi.* What Perſons thou willedſt me to thank, I have thanked.

I have bidden those Persons to dinner, whom you bad me bid.

I have sent the Letter to him, whom you wished me to send it to.

He is acquitted of those crimes, which you affirmed him to be accused of.

It is no shame to teach that, which it is fit to learn.

Some spare times do fall out to be, which I do not suffer to be lost.

With expectation of the future, he loseth things present, which he might enjoy.

† Sometimes of a Participle: as, *Quibus rebus adductus feciſti?* with what things moved didſt thou it.

I cannot well diſcern with what things he being offended ſhould ſpeak againſt us.

Theſe are the queſtions, whereto I am about to give anſwer.

There are found out crimes enough, whereof he is to be accuſed.

I had not heard of any thing, that had happened, with which he being affrighted ſhould run away.

* Sometimes of a Gerund: as, *Quem videndo obſtupui. Quæ nunc non eſt narrandi locus.* Which things at this preſent is no time to tell.

There ſtood an ignorant fellow prating three hours together, with hearing of whom I was tired at the heart.

Eggs are put under hens to ſit on, in putting under which eggs, it muſt be minded, that they be of an odd number.

I am now going to ſee my Father and Mother, of ſeeing whom I have a long time had a great deſire.

We have need of many things, which we now have no opportunity to buy.

You have been taught your duty towards God and the King, of the forſaking which there can never be any juſt cauſe.

* Sometime of a Prepoſition ſet before him: as, *Lego Virgilium, præ*

quo

quo cæteri Poetæ ſordent. Quem in locum deducta res ſit vides. Unto what ſtate the matter is now brought thou ſeeſt.

He ſpeak many things quaintly, amongſt which this alſo.

Now I return to Otho, *from whom I had digreſſed ſomewhat too farre.*

That wound comes not to a ſcarre, in which medicaments are tried.

He that is diſinherited may ſay many things, for which he would not go to law.

Thoſe matches which you unwiſely ruſh into, are they joys or burdens?

They fit themſelves for the Court, and for honours, in which thoſe very things are to be feared, which are hoped for.

* Sometimes with the Subſtantive that it doth accord with, it is put in the Nominative Caſe by reaſon that the Verb that it comes before requires a Nominative Caſe with it; as, *Senties qui vir ſiem.* Thou ſhalt perceive what a Fellow I am. Albeit in this manner of ſpeaking, *qui* is an Indefinite, and not a Relative.

Make tryal when you pleaſe, and you ſhall find what a Friend I am.

I cannot but wonder, when I ſee what madneſs there is in moſt men.

Do you not wonder what apparel this ſhould be.

It will quickly be ſeen what Souldiers we are, when once we come into the Field.

* Sometimes of a Noun Partitive or Diſtributive: as, *Quorum optimum ego habeo. Quarum rerum utram minus velim, non facile poſſum exiſtimare.* Of the which two things whether I would with leſs will have, I cannot eaſily eſteem.

The Woman fell into two dangers, whereof ſhe had tryed neither.

Whether of theſe two Books had you rather read?

I will now let you ſee trees, of which many were ſet with mine own hand.

I ſaw a company of Bul-

locks

locks, in a vallie, whereof one began to bellow aloud.

Man is by nature furniſhed with two hands, whereof the right hand is the ſtronger.

Many Phyloſophers flouriſhed once in Greece, *whereof* Socrates *was even by the Oracle judged the wiſeſt.*

The, Macedonians *that day had the better of the* Perſians, *of whom many thouſands were ſlain in the battel.*

¶ Sometimes it is put in the Genitive Caſe by reaſon of a Subſtantive coming next after him: as, *Cujus numen adoro. Ego illum non novi cujus causâ hoc incipis.* I knew him not for whoſe cauſe thou beginneſt this matter.

Is this the Boy, whoſe Father and Mother died of the plague?

He is truly happy, from whoſe ſafety no leſs joy ſhall come almoſt unto all men, than to himſelf.

Bleſſed is the Man, whoſe Conſcience hath no ſin to accuſe him of.

That Conquerour, whoſe valour and wiſdom all admired, dwelt in a Cottage.

Cicero *was a great lover of* Terence, *whoſe words he willingly made uſe of.*

* Sometime it is otherwiſe [i. e. in ſome other than the Genitive Caſe] governed of a Subſtantive: as, *Omnia tibi dabuntur, quibus opus habes.* All things ſhall be given thee, which thou haſt need of.

He is not a man of that credit [ea fide] *that you are of.*

Were he a Boy of that wit, which he is ſaid to be of, none could excell him.

Scholars many times have many Books in their ſtudies, whereof they have ſmall uſe.

How many things are there in the world, whereof a wiſe man hath no need.

† Sometime of an Adjective: as, *Cui ſimilem non vidi. Quo dignum te judicavi.*

What colour is that, where-

whereunto white is contrary?

My friends, whom I have been kind unto, are become mine enemies.

You may expect thanks from the Husbandmen, to whom your work is useful and acceptable.

I never lived unquietly with any man, to whom my habitation was neer.

It is not thank-worthy to give a thing to a man, whom it is unprofitable unto.

You tell me of a man, whom there is nothing equal, or second to.

You attribute that wit unto me, which I am not endued withal.

You put that honour upon me, which I am not worthy of.

¶ Sometime of an Adverb: as, *Cui utrum obviam procedam nondum ſtatui.* Whom whether I will goe to meet with I have not yet determined.

I have ſeen a man before now, whom you do dance exceedingly like unto.

I ſeldom goe to ſee men, whom I live much neerer to than you.

My Father, whom I hoped to meet by the way, brought me home again with him.

* Sometime it is put in the Ablative Caſe with this ſign *than*, and is governed of the Comparative Degree coming after him: as, *Utere virtute quâ nihil eſt melius.* Uſe vertue, than the which nothing is better.

He riſeth betime in the morning, than which nothing in the world is more wholeſome.

You give your ſelf to idleneſs, than which nothing is worſe.

This was the opinion of Socrates, *than whom in all* Greece *none was more wiſe.*

I am much taken with Seneca's *ſayings, than whom none of the Philoſophers ſpeaks more gravely.*

You and your Father are perſons, than whom I love and honour none more.

Beauty is a thing, than which

which nothing is more frail.

* Sometime it is not governed at all but is put in the Ablative Caſe abſolute: as, *Quantus erat Julius Cæſar, quo Imperatore Romani primùm Britanniam ingreſſi ſunt?* How worthy a man was *Julius Cæſar*, under whoſe conduct, the *Romans* firſt entred Britain?

How brave an Orator was Marcus Tullius, *under whoſe patronage the Innocent ever found ſafety?*

I will commit my ſelf unto God, who being my guide and guard, I ſhall not fail.

It was good living in the days of Saturn *who being King, chaſtity had its abiding in the earth.*

Sad was the end of Pompey *the* Great, *who being dead, his body was caſt upon the ſtrand.*

Great was the glory of the King that day, who coming into the army, the enemies fled out the field.

How great is the power of mony we may ſee by this, that it failing, all things elſe goe to decay.

* Alſo when it ſignifieth [i.e. referreth unto] an *inſtrument* wherewith a thing is to be done, it is put in the Ablative Caſe: as, *Ferrum habuit, quo ſe occideret*, He had a knife, wherewith he would have ſlain himſelf.

I took away from that madman the ſword, with which he would have killed me.

Had I a penn wherewith to write, I ſhould quickly write out that Book.

I want a ſtaffe to beat that Dog withall [i. e. *with which I may beat that Dog*].

If I muſt buy victuals you muſt find me mony to buy them with.

Who lent that traitor an halter to hang himſelf withall?

If you will make me a penn, I will get you a penknife to make it with i. e. *with which to make it.*

† Alſo when it referrs

to

to the *Means* whereby a thing is to be done: as, *Non mehercle habeo, quo tibi irato satisfaciam* Sen.

He is full of care, that those things wherewith he is delighted, may hold out to the last.

Let us take some course, by which it may be decided, whether shall rule over whether.

He said he might be corrupted with riches, with which an army might be corrupted.

There is to be no obeying of a Father in that, by which it is brought to pass, that he shall not be a Father.

† And also when it referrs to the Manner of the doing of a thing: as, *Nemo vivit eo more, quo cupit vivere*

We marshalled our army that day after the same manner, that we had done the day before.

He is to be punished after that manner, that slaves were wont to be punished in our forefathers days.

He looks upon his own end with that mind that a man who is secure, looks upon the end of another man withal [i. e. *with which*].

The Sea hath cast up those, whom it had swallowed, with the same force that it had swallowed them up withal.

* Nouns Interrogatives and Indefinites follow the Rule of the Relative: as, *Quis, uter, qualis. quantus, quotus, quisquis, quicunque, cujus, cujusmodi, cuimodi, cuicuimodi, utercunque, qualiscunque, quantuscunque, quotusquisque*, &c, which ever more come before the Verb like as the Relative doth: as, *Hei mihi, qualis erat? Talis erat? qualem nunquam vidi.*

Si quis me audit. Sen.

Quis sit divitiarum modus, quæris? Sen.

Si carum tibi servum venderes, quæreres, quis emptor esset. Sen.

Quæ tanta vos fert ira? Sen.

Si quæsierit aliquis, quæ can-

causa hominem adversus hominem in facinus coegit? Sen.

Quid faciam adoptatus? Sen.

Dic *quid in domo tua peccaverim?* Sen.

Quid est, quod aut negandum mihi, aut excusandum sit? Sen.

Illic si quid commisero, me nec meus recipiet pater. Sen.

Quod tantum malum humano generi vel sorte vel fato invectum? Sen.

Uter tandem nostrûm popularis est? Cic.

Ut neque dijudicari posset, uter utri anteferendus videretur. Cæs.

Ab utro insidiæ factæ sint, incertum est. Cic.

Hodie utro frui malis, optio sit tua. Cic.

Horum utro uti volumus, altero carendum est. Cic.

Dicis utrum mavis? elige. Mart.

Si quis est talis, quales esse omnes oportebat. Cic.

Qualis oratoris putas esse scribere historiam? Cic.

Nihil interest ad beatè vivendum, quali utaris cibo. Cic.

Annon intelligis quales viros mortuos summi sceleris arguas? Cic.

Te magnopere quæso, ut qualem te jam ante populo Romano præbuisti, talem te nobis hoc tempore impertias. Cic.

Omnino quale sit quæritur. Cic.

Qualia Ledæi *fata* Lacones *habent.* Mart.

Quanti hominis in dicendo putas esse scribere historiam? Cic.

Quantâ innocentiâ debent esse Imperatores? quantâ temperantiâ? Cic.

Qui adolescens admodum tantæ opinionis in declamando, quantæ postea in disputando fuit. Sen.

Quantum, & cujusmodi, & quale sit quæritur. Cic.

Quotus erit iste denarius, qui non sit deferendus? Cic 5. Ver.

Ex illis occidere me volet, quisquis frugalissimus fuerit. Sen. *Quoquo consilio fecerit, fecit certè suo. Quoquo alio modo cecide-*

rit,

rit, quæcunque ſit fortuna. Durrer.

Quicunque is eſt, ei me profiteor inimicum. Cic.

Quemcunque caſum fortuna dederit, & quæcunque fortuna erit oblata. Cic.

Quamcunque aſſequi potuerit in dicendo mediocritatem. Cic. de Orat.

Non omnia quæcunque loquimur, ad artem & ad præcepta eſſe revocanda. Cic.

Cujum pecus? an Melibœi? Virg.

Cujum puerum hîc apposuiſti? Ter.

Suámne eſſe aiebat? Non. Cujam igitur? Fratris filiam? Ter.

Quantum, & cujuſmodi, & omnino quale ſit quæritur. Cic.

Si interierit, cujuſmodi mors ejus fuerit, cujuſmodi res mortem ejus ſit conſecuta. Cic.

Ego vetere amico munuſculum mittere volui, cujuſmodi ipſius ſolent eſſe munera. Cic.

Conſideres gravius cuimodi ſint, ea quæ reprehendiſti. Gell.

Vereor enim cuicuimodi eſt, ne ità hunc videar ſervare, ut tibi omnino non pepercerim. Cic.

Demus huic aliquid æris, cuicuimodi eſt. Gell.

Ubi enim melius uti poſſumus, hoc cuicuimodi eſt otio? Cic.

Utercunque vicerit, non erit mirum futurum Cic.

Totum hoc leve eſt, qualecunque eſt. Cic.

Qualeſcunque ſummi civitatis viri ſunt, talis eſt civitas. Cic.

Quantumcunque eſt, mihi ſatis eſt. Sen.

Quicunque eramus, & quantulumcunque dicebamus. Cic.

Ut in quamlibet partem quotoquoque loco libebit, poſſimus. Cic.

Quotocuique lorica eſt? quis equum habet? Curt. l. 9.

* Not only the Relative, &c. when it is not the Nominative Caſe to the Verb, is ſet before the Verb, that governs it, but alſo the Subſtantive, that the Relative, &c. agrees with, if it be expreſſed: and that other word alſo that

that governs it, or its Substantive, (if it be not governed of the Verb) sometimes may, and sometimes must be construed before the Verb: as

Quibus rebus adductus feciſti?

Quæ nunc non eſt narrandi locus.

Quem in locum deducta res ſit vides.

Lego Virgilium, *præ quo cæteri Poetæ ſordent.*

Senties qui vir ſiem.

Quarum rerum utram minus velim, non facile poſſum exiſtimare.

Cujus numen adoro.

Quorum optimum ego habeo.

Ego illum non vidi, cujus causâ hoc incipis.

Quem videndo obſtupuit.

Cui ſimilem non vidi.

Ab utro inſidiæ factæ ſint, incertum eſt.

Horum utro uti volumus, altero carendum eſt.

Qualis oratoris, & quanti hominis in dicendo putas eſſe ſcribere hiſtoriam?

Nihil intereſt ad beatè vivendum quali utaris cibo.

Annon intelligis quales viros mortuos ſummi ſceleris arguas.

Qualia Ledæi *fata* Lacones *habent.*

Quantâ innocentiâ debent eſſe imperatores?

Quoquo conſilio fecerit, fecit certè ſuo.

Quemcunque caſum fortuna dederit, & quæcunque fortuna erit oblata.

Cujum puerum hic appoſuiſti?

Si intererit cujuſmodi mors ejus fuerit, cujuſmodi res mortem ejus ſit conſecuta.

Ut in quamlibet partem quotoquoque libebit loco, poſſimus.

Engliſh Examples of theſe two laſt Rules.

If any body ask for me, ſay I am gone abroad.

Who can count the ſands on the ſhore? or who can number the hairs of his head?

I never met with any man that could tell, what was the meaſure of the water in the Sea.

What ſo great boldneſs thruſts you on to this talkativeneſs?

If any body admire what reaſon induced me to believe this, I my ſelf ſhall wonder.

What ſaid he in his anger?

Can you ſay what I did amiſs all that time?

What is there in this World, that may be to be feared, or loved by a wiſeman?

If I loſe or marre ought, my mother will chide me.

What ſo great good hath befallen to our kindred by your advancement?

Whether of us is the better Scholar?

It is hard to ſay, which is to be preferred before which.

It cannot be told by whether the victory was got.

You may take your choice, whether of them you had rather uſe.

I know not whether of them I ſhall enjoy with more delight.

You may have whether you will.

It is a marvel if any man be ſuch as all men ſhould be.

I have bought you ſuch a horſe, as you deſired.

What kind of Preacher muſt he be, that ſhall convert all his hearers?

What kind of Artiſts work do you think it to be, to build a Caſtle in the Air?

It matters not to eternal life, what ſort of garment you have on, when you are buried.

One would hardly think, what kind of books ſome men will read, and commend.

Doe not doubt, but that I ſhall ſhew my ſelf ſuch in the height of honour, as I have heretofore ſhewed my ſelf in a low eſtate.

Few Countreys breed dogs, ſuch as England *doth.*

Such horſes as we ſell here, you will hardly buy elſewhere.

Of how great a man at fighting, do you think it to be the work, to conquer the World in three years?

Of how great wiſdom Preachers to be men! of how great diligence

diligence also! and of how great patience!

Though he be but a very Youth, yet he is one of as great ability in speaking, as his Father was in writing.

So much mony as a man hath in his purse, so much credit shall he have in the World.

I have given my Daughter to her portion, as much as I was well able to spare.

Know you what part of your Father's estate will fall to your share?

You cannot tell, in what year of your life, you must die, much less on what day of the year.

Whosoever he be that shall honour God, him God will honour.

Which way soever he take to live, I am not much concerned in it.

Which way soever it happen, I shall be contented.

Whosoever he be that is an Enemy to vertue, I am no Friend to him.

What kindness soever you shew to my Brother, I shall take it as done to my self.

Not all things whatsoever Wise men doe, are wisely done.

Whatsoever we have we do ow it all to the goodness of God.

Whose Book is this? Georges's or Peter's.

Whose Horse have you brought here?

If this be not your Mare, whose then do you say that she is?

Inquire about the Corn, how much there is of it, and of what sort it is.

It is a matter what a kind of life yours is, and of what sort your death shall be, and what kind of condition shall follow after your death?

I will send within this day or two some Apples such as use to grow in our Orchard.

In commending you should consider well, what kind of things those be which you doe commend.

Be he as he will, it may not be amiss to give something to him that is poor.

Such as it was, my Patron took my present kindly.

Whethersoever die first, the survivor is to be his heir.

Whithersoever you shall send, thither he will lose labour.

This work, whatever it be, is all easie enough to be done.

Of whatsoever sort you see the Governors of a State to be, of that sort will be the people.

How much soever it be that you give to an unthankful man, it is all lost.

How little soever you give to a thankful man, he will thank you for it.

Be the men who they will be, and how much or how little soever it be that they give you, you are beholden to them.

You have liberty to goe into any Country whatsoever you list, & to dwel in whatsoever Kingdom you please.

Of all the Philosophers that ever were, what one had an infallible judgement?

Of all men living what one know you, that is free from all faults?

In all the Army what one Souldier had a Helmet? What one a Gauntlet? or even a good Sword.

Examples of the latter Rule.

With what Arguments were you brought to believe so absurd an Opinion?

Which sayings of the Ancients we have not time now to rehearse.

Which Writings of the Poets I have not leisure now to be read

In what place of danger we now are brought, who sees not?

Into which estate of misery we foolishly fell by our own fault.

I love Beef, in Comparison of which all other meats are worth little.

If I come to you to dinner, you shall see what a Stomach I have to my Meat.

Of the which two Books whether I have the more mind to read, I cannot easily say.

Whose Pen have you got to write with?

Doe you know whose Book I am reading?

There are several Opinions

nions of Philoſophers, whereof Epicurus *held none of the beſt.*

For whoſe Cauſe do you undertake ſo great a journey?

If you knew for whoſe ſake I take all this pains, you would not blame me ſo.

There preach'd a Miniſter at our Church to day, in hearing of whom I was amazed: the like to whom I have not heard.

Whether of the two knives you like beſt, take that.

It is conſiderable unto health, what kind of diet you keep.

How great labour of brain and bodie muſt a Schoolmaſter endure to make good Scholars.

By what advice ſoever you doe it, to be ſure, you ſhall not doe it by mine.

Whatſoever Portion God gives us in this World, let us receive it with thankfulneſs.

Of our life, whatſoever ſort it be of, we muſt render an account unto God.

Let us ſo live, that at what time ſoever, and in whatſoever place death ſhall ſeize upon us, it may find us prepared.

CHAP. V.

Of the Artificial Order and Elegant placing of Words.

THE *Artificial Ordering* and Elegant placing of Words conduceth very much to the making of of Latine Good. To evince this, if there were need, it might ſuffice to ſay, that of the very ſame words, according to the different placing of them, may be made Latine very Elegant, or very Unelegant. For inſtance, the words *Rogo, ut venias ad me*, will be

very Elegant if placed thus, *Rogo, ut ad me venias*; or thus, *Ad me, ut venias, rogo*; or thus, *Ut ad me venias, rogo*; or thus, *Ad me, rogo, ut venias*. But very Unelegant, if placed thus. *Rogo ut me venias ad*; or *Rogo ad me venias ut*: or *Rogo me venias ut ad*; or *Rogo me venias ad ut*; or thus, *Ut me venias, Rogo ad* or *Ut venias me rogo ad*: or indeeed almoſt, if not altogether, any other way. That the Learner therefore may have ſome skil in that Art, let the Teacher give him ſome Rules. And when he hath made his Engliſh into plain true Latine, according to the Natural Order, let him then according to his Rules, tranſpoſe and place it in the Artificial Order; and when he hath done, ſhew it to his Maſter: who is to ſhew him where he fails; and to amend what he miſtakes in: and this done, let him again tranſcribe itinto his fair Book, and then commit it to memory as before.

For the Eaſe of the *Teacher*, and Uſe of the *Learner* I ſhall here ſet down a Collection of Rules for Artificial Ordering and Elegant placing of Words.

Rules of Placing Words.

And firſtof the Parts of a Compounded Word. The Parts of a Compounded Word may be Elegantly divided by ſome other Word coming betwixt the Parts, as

Rem verò *publicam* amiſimus. Cic.

De *juris* quoque *Conſultis*. Suet.

Quod judicium *cunque*. Cic.

Me certè in omnibus rebus *ſatis* noſtræque conjunctioni amorique *facturum* — Cic.

Prius inquit *quam* hoc circulo excedas. Val. Max.

Coturnices *antè* veniant *quàm* grues. Plin.

Cum multis annis *poſt* petiiſſem, *quàm* Prætores fuiſſent. Cic

Se-

Secondly of Words in a Sentence.

1. First, The Words that goe together in the Natural Order, are parted asunder in the Order Artificial, and the Governed come before those that govern; viz. the Oblique Cases in the beginning, the Verb in the end, and the Nominative Case in the middle betwixt both as

Munitissimam hostium civitatem Cæsar *occupavit.*

Petulanti bonos linguâ consectari desine.

2. Secondly, The Substantive of the Genitive Case is elegantly set before the Substantive that governs it, as

Immortalitatis amore flagravit. Cic.

Cum ipsius victoriæ conditione jure omnes victi occidissemus, clementiæ tuæ judicio conservati sumus. Cic.

3. Thirdly, The Adjective is usually set before the Substantive as

Ampla domus dedecori domino sæpe fit. Cic.

Tenacissimi sumus eorum, quæ *rudibus annis* percepimus. Quintil.

Exceptions.

Yet several sorts of Adjectives are sometimes elegantly set after their Substantives

(1.) Partitives; as *omnis*, and *nullus*.

Virtutis *laus omnis* in actione consistit. Cic.

Ut ad te scribendi meo arbitratu *facultas nulla* detur. Cic.

Majus mihi dare *beneficium nullum potes.* Cic.

So *Nemo.*

At verò hujus gloriæ, *C. Cæsar*, quam es paulo antè adeptus, *socium* habes *neminem.* Cic.

(2.) Numerals, as

Dies circiter *quindecim* iter fecerunt. Cæs.

Ad hominum *millia decem* undique coegit. Cæs.

Omnes omnium charitates *patria una* complexa est. Cic.

(3.) Comparatives and Superlatives, eſpecially in the end of a Sentence, where they many time ſtand very gracefully: as

Nihil illo regno *ſpoliatius, nihil* rege *egentius* Cic.

Imperatorem liberaliſsimum, ætatem opportuniſsimam, commendationem certè *ſingularem* habes. Cic.

(4.) Pronominals, as

Ardeo cupiditate incredibili, neq; ut ego arbitror reprehendendâ, *nomen* ut *noſtrum* ſcriptis illuſtretur & celebretur *tuis*. Cic.

Sunt *ingeniis noſtris* ſemina innata virtutum. Cic.

(5.) Adjectives of two Syllables, if their Subſtantives be of more Syllables; as

Quis *animo æquo* videt eum, quem impurè ac flagitiosè putet vivere? Cic.

Quæres habet *inflationem magnam*. Cic.

4. Fourthly, Betwixt the Adjective and the Subſtantive ſeveral things are elegantly inſerted.

(1.) If the Subſtantive and Adjective be of the Genitive Caſe, then the former Subſtantive will come elegantly between them: as

Cæſareæ clementia *Majeſtatis* pacem & tranquilitatem Provinciis dedit.

Philoſophia *omnium* mater *Artium* — Cic.

(2.) If the Subſtantive and Adjective be not of the Genitive Caſe, then the Subſtantive of the Genitive Caſe will come elegantly betwixt them: as

Hæc eſt *vera* juſtitiæ *laus* —

Ob *inclytam* viri *religionem*. Flor.

(3. If the Subſtantive be governed of any Preposition, the Prepoſition will come elegantly between the Subſtantive and the Adjective: as

Certâ de *causâ* nondum adducor ut faciam. Cic.

Hoc aſſequêre, ut *quam* in *partem* accipias minus laborem. Cic.

Quam

Quam ob *rem* venerim, dicam. Plaut,

(4.) If the Substantive be not governed of any Preposition, yet a Preposition with his Casual word may elegantly come between the Adjective and his Substantive: as

Casta ad virum *matrona* parendo imperat. Publ.

(5.) Between the Adjective and the Substantive, may elegantly be set not only Nouns; and Prepositions alone, or with their Cases: but single words of any sort almost: as

Pronoun. *Quamcunque* ei *fidem* dederis, præstabo. Cic.

Ego post *supplicationes* mihi *decretas* in *Dalmatiam* profectus sum, Cic. *Subcisiva* quædam *tempora* incurrunt, quæ ego perire non patior. Cic.

Verb. Hoc affirmo, & hoc *pace* dicam *tuâ*. Cic.

Adverb. *Maximam* verò *partem* quasi suo jure fortuna sibi vendicat. Cic.

Neque *ulla* unquam *ætas* de tuis laudibus conticesset. Cic.

Yea Clauses: as *Magnum* profectò *laborem Cæsar* assumpsit, quem fermè ab *ipsis* ad nos venisse *Gadibus* aiunt, ut *hostes suæ* quidem *Majestati rebelles*, *nostris* autem supra modum *rebus* infestos armis subigeret. *Quam* ob *causam perpetuum* illi *amorem* & *gratiam* debemus *immortalem*.

Note. If any thing come between the Substantive and the Adjective, then may either indifferently be set before other.

5. Fifthly, The Relative *qui* is elegantly set before the expressed Substantive, to which it referrs, especially if any other words come between: as

Quem cum isto *sermonem* habueris, procul stans accepi.

Propter eum, *quem* sibi ipse finxerat, *principatum* Cic.

Note.

Note. If *qui* in one clauſe of a Sentence anſwer to *hic*, *is*, or *idem* in another clauſe; that clauſe in which *qui* is, will very elegantly come firſt.

Quem puerum vidiſti formoſum, *hunc* vides deformem in ſenectâ. Varro.

Qui ſemel verecundiæ fines tranſierit; *eum* bene & naviter oportet eſſe impudentem. Cic.

Qui dolet rebus alicujus adverſis, *idem* alicujus etiam ſecundis dolet. Cic.

6. Sixthly. A Pronoun Primitive comes elegantly between a Pronoun Poſſeſſive, and the Subſtantive that it agrees with: as

Familiaritas mihi *tua* non injucunda eſt.

Tuo tibi *judicio* eſt utendum. Cic.

Gravi teſte privatus ſum *amoris ſummi* erga te *mei*. Cic.

7. Seventhly. The Pronoun *ipſe* being to be ſet after any Pronoun Primitive in an Oblique Caſe, may elegantly come either before, or after it, in the Nominative Caſe: as

Qui *ipſe ſibi* ſapiens prodeſſe nequit, nequicquam ſapit. Cic.

Odi ſapientem qui *ſibi ipſe* ſapiens non eſt. Cic.

Hæc ſcripſi, non ut de *me ipſe* dicerem, ſed ut-- Cic.

Non egeo medicinâ, *me ipſe* conſolor. Cic.

Tibi unum timendum ſit, ne *ipſe tibi* defuiſſe videare. Cic.

Qui me violare volent, *ſe ipſi* judicabunt. Cic.

8. Eightly. Prepoſitions moſtly come before their Caſual words: as

Illa præſidia, quæ *pro templis* omnibus cernitis. Cic.

Quâ *in vitâ* tantum abeſt ut voluptates ſectentur, etiam curas, ſollicitudines, vigilias perferunt. Cic.

Ego

Ego ipſi, quòd *de ſuâ ſententiâ* deceſſerit, pœnitendum putꝺ. Cic.

Accepi *à te* literas, quibus videris vereri, Ut epiſtolas illas acceperim. Cic.

Yet ſome Prepoſitions are not unelegantly ſet after their Caſe, not only in *Poets*, but in *Orators*, ; as

Neminem poſſe dare alteri matrimonium, niſi *quem penes* ſit patrimonium. Quintil.

Cordi mihi fuit, priuſquam ad te irem, quærere explorareque, quonam modo veteres noſtri particulâ iſtâ, *quâ de* agitur, uſi ſunt. A. Gell.

Quos adverſum multi ex *Bithyniâ* volentes occurrẽre falſum filium arguituri—Sal.

Quæ ſi *quꝰs inter* ſocietas aut eſt, aut fuit, aut futura eſt, eorum eſt habendus ad ſummum naturæ bonum optimus beatiſſimuſque comitatus. Cic.

Conſequeris tamen, ut eos ipſos, *quos contra* ſtatuas æquos placatoſque dimittas. Cic.

Perturbari animos neceſſe eſſe dicunt, ſed adhibent modum, *quem ultra* progredi non oporteat. Cic.

Quem locum *Ægyptum verſus* finem imperii habuere *Carthaginienſes*. Sal.

Poſtulavit ut aliquem populus daret, *quicum* communicaret. Cic.

Qu. Suffidium, quꝰcum mihi omnes receſſ.tudines ſunt, diligentius commendo. Cic.

Note. *Cum* is always ſet after *me*, *te*, and *nobis*; and *tenus* after his Caſual word.

And between the Prepoſition and his Caſe may other words be elegantly ſet, eſpecially the Genitive Caſe governed of that Subſtantive, which the Prepoſition comes before. as

Per ego te *Deos* oro, ut ne illis animum inducas credere. Ter.

Ex animi *ſententiâ*. Ter.

Pro rerum *magnitudine*. Cic.

9. Ninthly

9. Ninthly, Betwixt the Participle, and that Perſon of the Verb *Sum*, whereof the Preterperfect Tenſe of a Verb Paſſive or Deponent is made up, there may ſome word be elegantly placed: as

Diu *ſum* equidem *reluctatus*.

Decretum à Senatu *eſt*.

Hujus gloriæ, quam *es* paulo antè *adeptus*, ſocium habes neminem. Cic.

10. Tenthly, The Vocative Caſe; the Verbs *inquit* and *ait*, and the Particles *enim* and *autem*, have uſually ſomething placed in the beginning of a Sentence before them: as

Quanquam te *Marce fili*, annum jam audientem *Cratippum*, idque *Athenis* —— Cic.

Ennio delector, *ait*, —— Cic.

Quàm *inquit*, vellem neſcire literas. Suet. Ner. c. 10.

Nec *enim* is es quem forma iſta declarat. Cic.

Inanimatum eſt *enim* omne, quod impulſu agitur externo. Cic.

Erat *autem* difficile rem tantam inchoatam relinquere. Cic.

In quo *autem* deſiderare te ſignificabis. Cic.

11. Eleventhly, Words of Near and of Contrary ſignification, are elegantly placed together in a Sentence: as

Eveniunt *digna dignis*. Sal.

Doctus indocto quid præſtat? quod *cæco videns*. Plaut.

Caſta ad virum matrona *parendo imperat*. Publ.

12. Twelfthly, In a Contexture of things related each to other what is the more worthy, or before the other in nature, is elegantly placed formoſt in order: as

Mors in claris *viris* & *fœminis* dux in cœlum ſolet eſſe. Cic.

Dies, *noctesque* torqueor Cic. Tu, ſi *die* no-

noctesque memineris Cic. Fam. 11. 5.

13. Thirteenthly, In extenuating, the more weighty things ought to goe before, in aggravating, to follow the leſs or lighter; as Civem Romanum *vincire*, *verberare*, in *crucem tollere*.

Nulla *crux* ibi fuit, nulla *nex*, nulla *verberatio*, imo ne *cuſtodia* quidem.

14. Fourteenthly. In the placing of words, avoid all ſuch ſetting of them, as may beget *Obſcurity*, *Ambiguity*, or *Ill ſound*.

(1.) *Obſcurity*, as in that Sentence.

Fuit in hâc virtus iſta quondam republicâ, for Fuit iſta quondam in hâc republicâ virtus. Cic.

(2.) *Ambiguity*; as in thoſe { *Da temetum* / *Date metum* }: which becauſe they may be miſtaken either for other; therefore it is better to ſay *Temetum da*; or *Metum date*. So rather ſay *Atria ſumma*, than *Summa atria*, becauſe this laſt way the words may be miſtaken for *Summa tria*, or *Sumatria*, an Iſle. Rather ſay *Sci vine ego*, than *egone ſcivi*: becauſe this laſt may be miſtaken for *ego neſcivi*.

(3.) *Ill ſound* either ——

1 By the meeting together of many either *Vowells*; as *Poſtea eò itum eſt*, for which rather ſay *eò poſt itum eſt*: or harſh Conſonants as, *Ingens ſtrepitus*; for which rather ſay *ſtrepitus ingens*.

2. By the coming together of many either *Monoſyllables*; as *Collocutus ſum cum illo*; for which rather ſay *Collocutus cum illo ſum*. Or words of many ſyllables of like ſound, as *Harum ſcribendarum literarum occaſio hæc eſt*; for which rather ſay, *Harum ſcribendi literarum hæc occaſio eſt*.

A prudent intermixture of words long and ſhort, of like and of different ſound, beginning and ending interchangeably with Vowells and Conſonants,

ſonants is the one remedy of theſe faults.

The greateſt care for the well running of words, is to be had in the beginning, and end, eſpecially in the four or five laſt Syllables.

Thoſe Sentences are thought to be cloſed ſweetly, that end in words of like Syllables with theſe; *videatur*; *cariorem*; *parabat*; *tuum*: *Cœpiſſe*; *tribueretur*; *miſerim*; *conſervâſſem*; or any Tenſe of *ſum* after a Participle of the Præter Tenſe, or Future in *dus*.

But in theſe things liberty is very great, all things being to be meaſured by the *ear*; in the judgement of which if a Sentence ſound well, it matters not much what Syllables it conſiſts of.

Thirdly of Clauſes in a Period.

As *Words* and *Phraſes* in a ſimple Sentence, ſo the ſeveral *Clauſes* of a compounded Sentence, may be placed with more or leſs Elegancy: touching which the only Rule is, That the more frequent the Tranſpoſition is, the more Elegant is the Sentence, ſo no diſorder, or Obſcurity follow thereon: as for Example.

Nihil allatum eſt, ne rumoris quidem.
Nihil, ne rumoris quidem, allatum eſt.

Si à nobis deficis, moleſtè fero.
Moleſtè fero, ſi à nobis deficis.
Moleſtè, ſi à nobis deficis, fero.

Rogo, ut ad me venias.
Ut ad me venias, rogo.
Ad me ut venias, rogo.
Ad me, rogo, ut venias.

Gratum eſt mihi, quod ad me ſcribis.
Quod ad me ſcribis, gratum mihi eſt.
Mihi, quod ad me ſcribis, gratum eſt.

The

The main thing here to be avoided is the *Hyperbaton*, or confused intermixture of Words, belonging to one clause to another, which either alter the Sense, or renders the Sentence extremely difficult: as if one should say

Quem cum isto sermonem audivi, habuisti, for
Quem cum isto habuisti sermonem, audivi.

Is amicior mihi vivit, atque nullus est; for
Amicior mihi nullus vivit, atque is est; or
Nullus mihi amicior, atque is est, vivit.

Sunt oculos clari, qui cernis sydera tanquam: for
Cernis oculos, qui clari sunt tanquam sydera.

Penè macros arsit, dum turdos versat in igne; for
Pene arsit, dum macros in igne turdos versat.

And these few Rules or Observations may suffice to be instilled into a Learner, till Time and Reading do perfect his Style. He that would see more Observations of this Nature may consult Mr. *Brinslie's Gram. School.* ch 11. Mr. *Clark's Dux Grammaticus* p. 267 and *Formulæ Oratoriæ* pag. 335. Edit. anno 1659. *But especially *Buchler's* Elegancies; *Franciscus Sylvius's Progymnasmata*; and *Comenius's Ars Oratoria*, five *Grammatica Elegans*, especially ch. 4. The perusal of which Books cannot but be hugely improving to any ingenuous Learner, as conteining in them a world of the choicest and most elegant passages, that are to be found in the best extant Authors, brought as instances of their Observations, and Examples of their Rules. And thus much touching the *Artificial Ordering* and *Elegant placing of Words* in Sentences.

* *Horn de usu Authoris* p. 29.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Use of Phrases.

IF the *Artificial Ordering* of plain Words conduce much to the making of the Learner's Latine good, much more will a handsome contexture of *Elegant Romane Phrases*, or Forms of speaking, used by the best and purest Writers of the Latine Tongue. Of those therefore the Learner is to be exhorted to get into his head what store his memory shall be able to bear; and to be taught how to use them in his own Compositions For the first of these, the getting of his Memory well stored with Phrases, which is a work of some difficulty, requiring time, and diligence, and observation, the Teacher may be pleased to put his Learner upon some of these or the like practices: As first to have a fair *Paper-Book* on purpose to write down Latine Phrases and Elegant Forms of speaking in, as he shall occasionally meet with them in his Lessons; and to write them dayly down therein; and give a weekely account of them without Book unto his Master. Next to make an Abstract of all the Formes of speaking, and Phrases conteined in *Godwin's* Latine *Antiquities*, and to repeat them to the Master by heart three or four times over, in parts, by ten, or twenty, or a greater Number in a morning, according as his capacity shall be; and then by double that Number, and still in larger proportion till all be well imprinted into the Memory. Where that they may be the better reteined, let the Learner throughly read and digest that Book, till he be so well acquainted with the ground and rise of every Form or Phrase, that

that he can readily upon hearing the Phraſe, give the true account of the riſe; and occaſion thereof. After this to make an Abſtract of all the Forms and Phraſes conteined in that excellent little Book called *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, where are ſo many excellent Forms and Phraſes as well nigh comprehend all the Regular Conſtructions of Grammar, yèa and the Figurative ones too: and let them alſo in the ſame Method and manner be gotten by heart, and repeated. He may be much improved alſo in this way by what may be found of this nature in my own *Treatiſes of Engliſh Particles* and *Idiomes*. Laſtly the Teacher may make an Abſtract of ſome one Phraſe-Book of beſt note and account (ſuch as *Winchefters* Phraſes Mr. *Huiſes* Phraſes, or the like) taking only two or three of the beſt Phraſes of every Head, and give his Scholar that to tranſcribe and get by heart. Theſe Practices may be ſome preſent trouble to the doer: yet done for once they are done for always; and the benefit is ſuch as will vaſtly recompenſe the time and trouble. And becauſe it is my deſign to ſave both the Teacher and Learner all the Time and Labour that I can, Therefore having two ſuch Abſtracts out of *Godwins Antiquities*, and *Hermes Anglo-Latinus* as I ſpake of, Lying by me many years agoe made for my private uſe, I have thought good here to communicate them. The Teacher may, I know, make much better of his own, eſpecially being that I had not one of the Books by me, to compare my old Collection withall: but in the mean time he may be pleaſed to make uſe of theſe, which I do the more earneſtly recommend to uſe, in regard the *One*, beſides the many choice Phraſes that it conteins, gives a great inſight into the *Romane Cuſtomes*, eſpecially if recourſe be had occaſionally unto the Author for the underſtanding of

the Phraſes, and ſo may prove a ſucceſsful key for the opening of many difficulties in the beſt of Latine Authors, *Cicero* eſpecially: The *Other*, beſides the many *Elegant Idioms* or *Proprieties* of Engliſh and Latine that it comprehends, gives a good inlet into the knowledge of the *Ornate Grammatical Conſtruction*, for the moſt, if not all, of whoſe Rules it furniſhes the Reader with very proper and pertinent Examples.

A Collection of Phraſes out of Dr. *Godwins* Romane *Antiquities*. Lib. 1.

Sect 1. Ch. 1.

To build a new Town. — Urbem novam condere.

To ſet out where the Walls of a Town ſhould be. — Urbem / Mœnia } deſignare aratro.

Chap. 2. *We flie to thee as to our only refuge.* — Ad te tanquam ad aſylum; aram confugimus.

C. 10. *To keep the Aſſiſes.* — Forum agere.

To appoint where Aſsiſes ſhall be kept. — Forum indicere.

C. 15. *Huge books.* — Libri Elephantini.

C. 17. *An unconſtant; unſetled mind Led: ſpare horſes.* — Ingenium volaticum; deſultorium.

— Equi deſultorii.

He is to be barred from giving his voice. — De ponte dejiciendus eſt.

C. 18. *From the beginning to the ending.* — A carceribus ad metam; ob ovo ad mala.

C. 19

C. 19. *An ignoble Person; one of the hinds.* — Inter cuneos residet.

To goe into the Field; enter the Lists. — In arenam descendere.

C. 20. *To appoint where a Temple should be built.* — Effari Templa; sistere Phana.

l. 1. Sect. 2.

Chap. 1. *Unfainedly; like a Romane; from the heart.* — More Romano.

Free Denisons of Rome *made such by cooptation.* — Civitate donati.

To make free of Rome; *of any City.* — Civitate donare.

C. 2. *Cursed to Hell.* — Diis inferis devoti

Senators of Rome. — Patres conscripti.

Senators of the lower House; Members of the House of Commons. — Senatores minorum gentium.

C. 3. *A Troop Horse; a Horse for the Service of the Warr.* — Equus publicus, militaris.

Men of no account; inferior, base persons. — Ignota capita; sine nomine turba. *Poet.*

C. 4. *An upstart Citizen.* — Novus & reptitius civis. Sal.

A Gentleman; a Knight of the first head. — Novus homo.

C. 6. *Free-born Citizens.* — Cives originarii; ingenui.

Free-made Citizens. — Liberti; libertini; Civitate donati.

To make one free; to set at liberty. — E manu aliquem emittere; ad pileum vocare; vindictâ liberare.

I have a mind to give him his freedom. — Hunc liberum esse volo.

He is a { *Free* / *Noble* } *man*	Habet tria nomina.
To pay ones debt.	Nomina liberare.
To run into debt.	Nomina facere.
To sue for payment.	Nomina exigere.

LIB. II.

Sect. 1. Ch. 1.

A good cudgelling.	Argumentum bacillinum.
Gods of the greater Nations	Dii majorum Gentium; nobiles; consentes.
Gods of the lesser Nations.	Dii minorum Gentium; Dii indigetes: Semidei.
Country Gods; tutelar Gods.	Dii patrii, Dii tutelares.
Indifferent, neuter, common Gods.	Dii communes.
The Good Angel; the Evil Angel.	Bonus genius; Malus genius.
The Womens guardian Angels.	Junones.
It fell out ill.	Diis iratis factum, *Plaut. Pœn.*
No man without his misfortune	Quisque suos patimur manes.
He makes much of himself; he pampers his Kite; carcass.	Genio indulget.
A very pinch-belly; a thief to his own belly; carcass.	Genium defraudat.
The Grace-cup	Poculum charitatis; -boni genii
In a little cottage	Parvo sub lare, *Hor.*
A man that hath no certain abiding place; settled dwelling.	Homo incerti laris.

A very Eat-al; one that plays the glutton; greedygut; leaves not so much as manners in the dish.

Lari sacrificat.

Sect. 2.

Ch. 2. *It is seed time.*

Credenda *Ceres* arvis, *Or* *Cereri* sacrificat.

He makes a feast without wine.

c. 6. *With good luck, luckily.*

Bonis avibus; auspiciis; ave sinistrâ; cornice sinistrâ.

With ill luck.

Malis avibus.

To begin a thing

Auspicari rem.

A good sign; we shall speed well.

Intonuit lævum.

Protectors of the Commons

Tribuni plebis.

c. 9. *He gave over being priest; left his priesthood.*

Sacerdotio abibat.

c. 10. *The Battel was doubtful; fought with various success; now one side had the better, now the other.*

Vario *Marte* pugnatum est.

By ones own strength.

Proprio *Marte*

Dainty cheer.

Saliares dapes.

c. 11. *He hath sent him a challenge; -- challenged him into the field.*

Arietem emisit.

A denunciation of war.

Clarigatio.

c. 12. *It is undoubtedly true; true as Gospel.*

Sibyllæ folium est.

An hard task.

Laboriosius est quàm *Sibyllæ* folia colligere.

c. 13. *One thief accuseth another; the pot calls the pan burnt-arse.*

Clodius accusat mœchos.

c. 14. *A rude fellow; a leud perſon; a very raſcal.*	Circulator *Cybelleius.*
c. 15. *A coſtly ſupper; a ſumptuous feaſt; a feaſt for an Abbot; a commencement-ſupper; an inſtallation-ſupper.*	Cœna pontifica; aditialis.
c. 19. *To enterpriſe a thing without due reverence, or preparation.*	Accedere ad rem illotis { manibus. pedibus.
Muſt I be whipt for your faults? --ſuffer for your rogueries?	Meum tergum ſtultitiæ tuæ ſubdes ſuccedaneum?
Mind what you are about.	Hoc age.
To take a light taſte of a thing.	Libare.
He grows in grace.	Mactus eſt virtute.
To ſlay the ſacrifice.	Hoſtiare victimam; mactare, ferire hoſtiam.
He cannot ſtay till grace be be ſaid.	Sacra haud immolata devorat.
The firſt offerings.	Prima libamina.
c. 20. *Witneſſes to a contract*	Signatores.
To marry a wife.	Ducere uxorem.
The marriage-bed.	Genialis lectus.
Where you are Lord I am Lady; where you are Jack, I am Gill.	Ubi tu *Cajus*, ibi ego *Caja.*
I have as good right in the eſtate as you.	
I will have nothing to do--, --no dealing with you.	Conditione tuâ non utar; Res tuas tibi habeto; agito.
Cæſar *hath divorced* Pompeia.	*Cæſar Pompeiæ* nuncium remiſit.

He

He hath cast off all goodness.

Virtuti nuncium remisit.

c. 21. *It is past help; -cure; all's in vain; to no purpose; there is no hope; we have done what we can, and can do no good.*

Conclamatum est.

You have your leave; you may be packing; be gone have leave to depart.

Ilicet.

To make a funeral Sermon; -Oration for one.

Defunctum pro rostris laudare.

It is time now; Now's the time.

Jam tempus est.

An old carle; a down man; one that hath one foot already in the grave.

Silicernium.

Sect. 3.

c. 1. *The fourth day of* April.

Pridie nonas *Aprilis.*

Holy day cloaths.

Purpura *Megalensis.*

c. 2. *It is a secret; no body knows the reason of it.*

Est inter arcana *Cereris.*

c. 5. *Worse scared then hurt; better then we looked for; not so ill as we feared; all will be well; the old Father daunces.*

Salva res est, saltat senex.

He has lost, both his labour and cost.

Operam & oleum perdidit; Opera & impensa periit.

c. 6. *Having a mind to make bets; --to lay wagers.*

Sponsionibus concitatus.

To fight at whorlebats.

Bellare cestu.

c. 7. *He was hummed ex-*

Fregit subsellia versu;

traordinarily; highly applauded for his verſes; --ſermon; cried up mightily.	oratione; clamatum rectè, bene, pulchrè; Grande ſophos.
c. 9. *To make a ſolemn vow unto God.*	Nota nuncupare; facere.
To make a vow to build a Church.	Vovere templum.
To bind ones ſelf to make good his vow.	Signare votum.
Lyable to make good his vow.	Voti reus.
Bound to performance of his vow.	Damnatus voti; voto.
To have ones deſire accompliſhed.	Damnari voti; voto.
c. 10. *Hirelings; perſons hired to play prizes.*	Auctorati.
A flouriſh before the fight.	Præludium.
It is one thing to flouriſh, another to fight.	Aliud eſt ventilare, aliud pugnare.
Weapons for { *ſhow* / *fight*	Luſoria, exercitoria, decretoria } tela. arma.
To fight at ſharps; with naked weapons.	Dimicare ad certum; verſis armis pugnare.
To piſſe backward; change ones purpoſe; go back with his word.	Cedere; demigrare de gradu.
He is in a maze; driven to change his mind; put to a puzzle.	De mentis ſtatu dejicitur; deturbatur.
A conqueſt after a combat.	Palma lemniſcata.
He has won many a prize.	Plurimarum palmarum homo.
Diſcharged from his pains.	Rude donatus.
He hath a mind to put a trick upon you.	Tragulam in te injicere adornat, *Plaut.*

An-

To play at blindmans buffet; to wink and ſtrike
Andabatarum more pugnare.

He gives him a challenge; --dares him to fight.
Minimo provocat.

c. 11 *The end of a mans life.*
Vitæ humanæ Cataſtrophe.

A man fit for all parts; -good at any thing.
Omnium ſcenarum homo.

Recreatory diverſions.
Diludia.

A lofty ſtyle.
Sophocleus cothurnus.

c. 13. *He hath broken the league of Hoſpitality.*
Teſſeram hoſpitii confregit.

Size ace; a gooſe to a chicken; a very unequal compariſon.
Κῶος πρὸς χῆν: *Cous* ad chium.

A winning caſt; a luckie caſt.
Jactus pronus; plenus; ſenio; *Venus*; *Cous*.

A loſing caſt; an ill chance; an unluckie throw.
Jactus ſupinus; inanis; canis; canicula; chius.

I will win the horſe or loſe the ſaddle; win all or loſe all.
Aut ter ſex; aut tres teſſeræ.

To whip a top.
Buxum torquere flagello.

To play at even or odd.
Ludere par impar.

To leave boys play; to be paſt a Child.
Nuces relinquere.

Croſſe or pile.
Vel capita, vel navim.

c. 14. *He did invite me very earneſtly; --was very earneſt with me to come.*
Penulam mihi ſcidit.

Unbidden gueſts.
Muſcæ; umbræ.

He needed but ſmall invitation.
Illius ego vix tetigi penulam, tamen remanſit.

I rom

From the beginning to the ending.	Ab ovo ad mala.
The first dish at the Feast.	Procœmium Cœnæ.
The last dish at the Feast.	Epilogus Cœnæ.
The prime; chief dish.	Caput Cœnæ; fundus & fundamentum Cœnæ. *Lipſ.*
A { *Light Supper.* / *Dole in meat, or mony.*	Sportula.
A well furniſhed Table, -great varieties; a plentiful Supper; great chear.	Cœna recta; dubia.
A thinne Supper? ſlender Table; ſmall Cheer; ſcanty Proviſions.	Cœna ambulatoria.

LIB. III.

Sect. 1.

Chap. 1. *At latter Lammas; at nevermaſs.*	Ad Calendas *Græcas.*
The fifth of January.	Nonæ *Januariæ; Januarii.*
The fourth of January.	Pridie nonarum *or* nonas *Jan.*
The thirteenth day of Jan.	Idus *Januarii.*
The twelfth day of Jan.	Pridie Iduum, vel Idus *Januarii.*
The firſt day of January	Kalendæ *Januariæ.*
The laſt day of December.	Pridie Calend. *Jan.*
Fortunate dayes.	Dies alibi.
Unfortunate dayes.	Dies atri; poſtriduani; *Ægyptiaci*; nefaſti.
Holy daies.	Dies Feſti; feriati; feriæ.
Working days.	Dies Profeſti.

Halfe

Halfe Holy dayes.	Dies intercisi.
A Law-day.	Dies comitialis.
Whole Court or Leet / *Half Court* / *Non Leet.* } *days.*	Dies { Fasti / ex parte Fasti. / nefasti.
A Common Barreter; wrangling fellow.	Homo comitialis.
C. 2. *An Old man.*	Depontanus.
Old men have a writ of Ease given them; i. e. are exempted from giving their voices in the Assemblies.	Sexagenarii de ponte dejiciendi.
By word of mouth.	Vivâ voce.
I am for the old way; love no changing.	Antiquum volo.
He had not seven voices for him.	Suffragiorum puncta non tulit Septem.
He had not a man against him; every body stood for him.	Omne tulit punctum.
A chief heir; heir to the main inheritance.	Heres primæ ceræ; in primo gradu institutus; ex toto asse.
A Legatee; one that hath a legacy given him.	Hæres est in imâ cerâ; legatarius.
Confused notes; foul papers.	Adversaria.
Books of Accompt.	Tabulæ accepti & expensi.
Statute Books or Books of Record.	Tabulæ publicæ.
Letters of protection.	Tabulæ novæ.
Bills of Sale.	Tabulæ auctionariæ.
A letter; a letter-carrier.	Tabellæ, Tabellarius.

We opened; broke up the letter.	Linum incidimus.
To turn Cat in the pan; ſay and unſay; make a recantation.	Stylum invertere.
He knew his own hand and ſeal.	Cognovit manum & ſignum ſuum.
To read over a Book.	Evolvere librum.
To bring to an end.	Ad umbilicum ducere.
To publiſh a Law to be made.	Promulgare legem.
To move that a Law be made.	Rogare legem.
To record a Law.	Ferre legem.
To proclaim or publiſh a Law after it be made.	Figere legem; tabulam.
To cancell a Law.	Refigere Legem.
The falling ſickneſs.	Morbus comitialis.
Chap. 3. *To forbid the proceedings.*	Obnunciare; intercedere.
Chap. 4. *Authours of beſt Account, Claſsical Authors.*	Claſſici ſcriptores.
Men of ſmall means.	Tenuis cenſûs homines; proletarii.
To ſound the { *alarme.* / *retreat.*	Claſſicum } canere. / Receptui }
C. 6. *To ſue for an Office.*	Ambire magiſtratum.
To enter into an Office.	Inire magiſtratum.
To depart out of an Office.	Abire magiſtratu.
To have as many voices as the Law doth require.	Conficere legitima ſuffragia.
To have the moſt voices; yet not ſo many as the Law requireth.	Explere ſuffragia.
C. 7. *He is ready; in a readineſs.*	Altè præcinctus eſt.

A looſe Woman; lewd ſtrumpet.	Mulier togata.
To buckle; make ready for Warre.	Ad ſaga ire; ad certamen ſe accingere
Peace is to be preferred before Warr.	Cedant ſaga; arma togæ.
He is paſt a ſtripling; grown up to years of diſcretion	Exceſſit ex ephebis.
He is paſt a Child; grown to mans eſtate.	Virilem togam ſumpſit.
A Suitor for an Office.	Candidatus.
A young Student.	Eloquentiæ Candidatus.
To change his apparel; put on mourning Weeds.	Mutare veſtem.
His Majeſties principal Secretary.	Candidatus Principis; Quæſtor candidatus.
Childhood.	Ætas prætexta.
An embroidered gown.	Toga picta; palmata; triumphalis.
C 8. *Neer is my ſhirt; but neerer my skinn.*	Tunica pallio propior eſt.
He hath loſt his mony.	Zonam perdidit.
To arm himſelf.	Arma induere.
To deflour a Virgin.	Zonam ſolvere.
Lib. 3 Sect. 2.	
Chap. 2. *To diſcharge one of his Office.*	Faſces abrogare.
To give place; yield unto.	Faſces ſubmittere.
C. 3. *The Decree of the Senate.*	Senatûsconſultum.
To propound a matter to the Senate.	Referre ad Senatum.
I am fully perſwaded of his opinion.	In illius ſententiam iturus ſum; manibus pedibuſque diſceſſurus.

He was favourably heard in the Senate.	Senatus ei dabatur; Stetit in Senatu.
The Senate neglected; condemned him.	Jacuit in Senatu.
To ſtrain; or } a mans ſeize on } goods.	Cædere. Concidere. Capere. Auferre. } pignora.
C. 4. *The Conſul; Maior Elect.*	Ad conſulatum deſignatus.
C. 5, *The authority of Magiſtrates to inquire into and reform manners.*	Virgula cenſoria.
To depoſe a Senator.	Senatu movere.
To pull one down a pegge.	Tribu movere.
Five; ten; fifteen years ſpace.	Luſtrum; duo; tria luſtra.
To purge; to muſter an Army.	Condere luſtrum.
C. 6. *To grant out a Writ or Action againſt a man.*	Dare actionem.
To paſs judgement on one.	Dicere jus.
To ſee and allow the delivery of the thing; or perſon whereon judgement is paſſed.	Rem; hominem addicere.
To ſell a mans life.	Addicere ſanguinem alicujus.
C. 7. *Within an hundred miles.*	Intra centeſimum Lapidem.
C. 16. *An excommunicate perſon.*	Homo ſacer.
C. 22. *To take Provinces by agreement.*	Comparare Provincias.

To

To have the Provinces by lot.	Sortiri Provincias.
Lib. 3. Sect. 3.	
Chap. 2. *Loss of life.*	Ultimum supplicium.
Disfranchisement.	Capitis diminutio.
To banish one out of the City.	Alicui aqua & igni interdicere; hominem proscribere.
To set a mans goods to sale that will not appear in Court.	Bona alicujus proscribere.
C. 4. *To prick; egge a man on.*	Stimulo fodere.
C. 5. *Little Ease.*	Mala mansio.
C. 8. *Saved from the gallows.*	De Lapide empti; à furca redempti.
C. 9. *To be condemned to the drawing of water.*	In Antliam damnari.
I will send you to Bridewell; to the House of Correction.	In pistrinum te dedam.
To be condemned to the Mines.	Damnari in metallum; in opus metalli.
A Rogue that is burnt in the hand; brow; shoulder.	Neubo stigmaticus; literatus.
Lib. 3. Sect. 4.	
Chap. 1. *To cite one into the Court*	In jus vocare.
C. 2. *To judge in person.*	Judicare.
To judge by proxie.	Judicium dare.
They are acquitted.	Secundum eos lis datur.
To be cast in ones suit.	Lite; causâ cadere.
C. 4. *Condemned unheard; without being heard speak for himself.*	Indictâ causâ damnatus.
To work underhand; conspire against one.	Coire.

To circumvent; deceive, cheat; oppress with false judgement procured by bribery or confederacy.	Circumvenire; circumscribere.
Citizens by { *birth.* / *donation.*	Cives { Nati. / Adscripti; civitate donati.
To render ones name to the Magistrate	Apud Prætorem profiteri; nomen profiteri.
c. 5. *To make a speech to the people.*	Agere ad populum.
To assemble the people to give their voices.	Agere cum populo.
c. 9. *To be in chief command; commander in chief in the army.*	Esse cum imperio.
To be set to sale.	Publico præconi; hastæ subjici.
To buy of one that hath no power; no right; nothing to do to sell.	A malo auctore emere.
The sale of Cæsar's *goods.*	Hasta *Cæsaris.*
Goods set at sale.	Bona suspensa.
To put in bands to answer.	Dejicere libellos.
To shew he hath a mind to buy.	Digitum tollere.
c. 12. *A Pig with a pudding in the belly.*	Porcellus *Trojanus.*
c. 14. *Let him be begg'd for a fool.*	Ad agnatos & gentiles deducendus est.
He is made sole heir.	Hæres in totum assem institutus est.
An heir to some part of the whole.	Hæres ex toto asse.
To forge a crime.	Calumniari.

To

To { *enter an action.* / *choose Judges by lot.*	Dicam { scribere, / sortiri.
To play the false Proctour.	Prævaricari.
To desist in his accusation; let his suit fall.	Tergiversari.
A mortgaging of land to pay mony.	Mancipatio fiduciaria.
To receive a mortgage; take land for security.	Accipere fiduciam.
To pay; repay.	Pendo; rependo.
c. 19. *To plead sickness for non-appearance.*	Morbum excusare.
c. 20. *To put mony to use.*	Pecuniam occupare; fœnerari; fœnori dare; collocare.
To produce witnesses on both sides.	Litem contestari.
To put in sureties.	Satisdationes facere.
To pay his fine.	Judicatum solvere.
To stand to the verdict of the Court.	Rem ratem habere.
To make an end-; an agreement betwixt themselves.	Lites redimere; pactionem facere.
To pay the costs and charges of the suit.	Litem æstimare.
A citation of one into the Court.	In jus vocatio.
To accuse one of a crime.	Postulare aliquem de crimine.
To enter an action against one.	Alicui actionem; litem intendere; diem dicere.
To demand baile; suretics for appearance.	Vadari reum.

To enter into Bond for appearance.	Promittere vadimonium.
Sentence is put off till the third day.	Lis; reus comperendinatur.
To swear he doth not accuse falsly, or maliciously.	Calumniam jurare; dejurare; in litem jurare.
An execution to seize on ones goods.	Edictum peremptorium.
He made his appearance in the Court.	Se stitit.
We must have longer time to consider.	Amplius cognoscendum.
To sit upon life and Death on a man.	De Capite alicujus quærere.
c. 21. *To argue the case* pro *and* con; *to fight hand to hand.* (one	Manum; manu conserere.
To offer to lay a wager with	Sponsione provocare.
To lay a wager with one.	Contendere ex provocatione.
To bind himself to pay what shall be adjudged.	Satisdare judicatum solvi.
To bind himself to stand to the judgment of the Court	Satisdare rem ratam habere.

LIB. IV.

c. 1. *To take a solemn Oath*	Jurare *Jovem* lapidem; per *Jovem* lapidem.
To serve under a Captain in war.	Mereri sub duce.
An old souldier; that hath served out his time, and is discharged of his service.	Miles emeritus.

He

He hath ſerved out his time in the wars. Stipendia confecit.

To ſound a call, Claſſicum canere.

To joyn battel. Conferre ſigna; collatis ſignis pugnare.

To make a great ſhout. Barritum tollere.

To claſh or ruſtle with their armour. Arma concutere.

To give a great ſhout in token the Souldiers ſhould truſſe up their bag and baggage. Conclamare vaſa.

Readily. Colligatis vaſis; paratè; expeditè.

To be in a Readineſs continually. In præcinctu ſtare; vivere.

c. 2. *A freſh-water ſouldier.* Tyro.

The initiation into any Art; ſcience; war. Tyrocinium.

An old beaten ſouldier. Veteranus.

To leap, skip, run from one thing to another. Agere velitatim.

I will ſave one; keep as far out of danger as I can. Ego ero poſt principia.

It is come to the laſt puſh. Ad Triarios ventum eſt.

c. 3. *His great friend hath forſaken him.* Vallus vitem decepit.

To aſſail by covert wayes. Cuniculis oppugnare.

To aſſault by open force. Machinis oppugnare.

c. 4. *That haſt undertaken a hard task.* Provinciam cepiſti duram.

To caſt account with the pen. Scribendo conficere rationes.

c. 5. *The caſhiering of a Souldier.* Ignominioſa dimiſſio.

The ſtopping of a Souldier's pay.	Fraudatio ſtipendii.
He hath loſt his pay.	Ære dirutus eſt.
He deſerves a good cudgelling.	Fuſtuarium meretur.
To be ſcourged with rods.	Virgis cædi.
C. 6. *To yeild the victory; to give one the better of it.*	Herbam dare.

A Collection of Phraſes out of *Hermes* Anglo-Latinus.

I *Will make thee do it.* i. e. *conſtrain.*	COgam te hoc facere.
Make [i. e. *turn*] *this into Latine.*	Verte hoc Latinè.
He made [i. e. *feigned*] *as though he wept.*	Simulavit quaſi fleret; -ſe flere.
I will mak them friends. i. e. *reconcile.*	Redigam eos in gratiam.
I would be loath to make thee be beaten. [i.e. *give cauſe.*	Non lubens committerem, ut vapules.
He makes a mouth. [i. e. *writhes.*	Os intorquet.
I will make good [i. e. *fill up or ſupplie.*	Supplebo.
He made much of me.	Comiter me tractavit
What did you make of this years crop?	Quanti vendidiſti iſtius anni proventum?
Make a Legge.	Flecte poplitem.
Make the Bedd.	Sterne lectum.
To make Warre.	Bellum gerere.
Make haſt.	Feſtina; propera.

To

To make a Verſe.	Carmen componere.
To make Water.	Urinam reddere.
He made a Law.	Legem tulit.
Make ready Supper.	Para; adorna cœnam.
Make a Fire.	Exſtrue ignem.
You ſhall never make me believe this tale.	Nunquam mihi fidem facies hujus fabulæ.
You make a fool of me.	Ludis me; pro ludibrio habes.
He made him a King.	Regem eum creavit.
He makes a ſtirr about nothing.	Tumultuatur in me nihili.
I wig make an end.	Abſolvam; finiam; finem faciam.
He being weary lay down; he laid him down when he was weary.	Ille defeſſus decubuit.
He cracks of his exploits; wealth.	Crepat facinora; divitias.
He ſaith nothing for fear; he is in ſuch a fear that he is not able to ſay a word.	Tacet metu.
I bought it for neither more nor leſs; I paid juſt ſo much for it.	Nec pluris, nec minoris emi.
It is I; it was thou.	Ego ſum. Tu eras.
It is not thou canſt ſcare me.	Non tu is es qui me terrere potes.
I am ſound.	Valeo.
He is pale; paliſh, or ſomewhat pale.	Pallet; pallidior eſt.
What is he good for?	Cui rei utilis eſt?
Who will goe with me? I will.	Quis mecum ibit? Ego ibo.
My poor help.	Opella mea.

A pettie King.	Regulus.
A pedling poet.	Poetaſter.
A little fellow.	Homunculus.
A poor gain.	Lucellum.
Dear heart.	Corculum.
A ſmall field.	Agellus.
Prettie well.	Meliuſculè.
Somewhat fearful.	Timidiuſculus; timidior; ſubtimidus.
A poor pittance.	particula; portiuncula.
A brick-wal.	Murus coctilis.
A Summer Apple.	Præcox pomum.
Houſhold affairs.	Res domeſticæ.
An eye witneſs.	Oculatus teſtis.
In the top of the houſe,	In ſummis ædibus.
In the bottom of Hell.	In imo Tartaro.
The furtheſt part of the world.	Ultima terra.
At the end of the Town.	Ad extremum oppidum.
About the lower end of the ſide.	Quaſi in extrema pagina.
At break of day.	Primâ luce.
The reſt of the mony.	Reliqua pecunia.
In the midſt of the City.	In Urbe mediâ.
Born the fourth day of the Moon; in an unluckie hour.	Quartâ Lunâ natus.
I am here that did it.	Adſum qui feci.
This houſe of yours is like to fall.	Hæc tua domus eſt ruitura.
This pride of hers will come down.	Ejus ſuperbia detumeſcet. ſc. -
Your own Knavery will bewray you.	Tua ipſius nequitia te prodet.
I ſaw him my ſelf with my own eyes.	Egomet ipſe vidi meis ipſius oculis.
They their own ſelves did	Illi ipſi fecerunt ſuâ

it with their own hand.	ipſorum manu.
Thou thy own ſelf.	Tu ipſe.
Here is the man his own ſelf.	Adeſt ipſe homo.
He himſelf; or his own ſelf.	Ille ipſe.
I enquired of a friend of mine; and he told me.	Sciſcitabar à quodam familiari meo, qui nunciavit mihi.
He hath not wherewithal to buy a Halter to hang himſelf.	Non habet, quo reſtim emat ad ſuſpendium.
A ſtorm will ſink a Ship.	Procella ſubmerget navim.
The Ship ſinketh.	Navis ſubſidit.
Look hither.	Reſpice huc.
He looks like a ſloven.	Videtur ſordidus.
It will break before it will bow.	Priùs frangitur, quàm flectitur.
What haſt thou been doing?	Quid feciſti?
I have been writing.	Scripſi.
The mony is in the coyning.	Argentum cuditur.
Speak out thy words.	Eloquere verba.
I care not for thee.	Nihil moror te.
I will tarrie abroad out of doors.	Morabor ſub dio.
He is followed by many, overtaken by few.	Multi ſequuntur eum, pauci aſſequuntur.
Winter was well nigh ſpent, and the Spring drew on.	Præcipitaverat hyems, & appetebat ver.
Thou art doing, but makeſt no riddance.	Moves, ſed non promoves.
He cannot forbear doing miſchief; -keep out of ill turnes.	A maleficio non temperabit.
He is broken; bankrupt.	Decoxit.
Good luck have the buſineſs; God ſpeed it.	Vertat hæc res bene.
It waxeth night; ripe.	Veſperaſcit; matureſcit.

I am to goe.	Sum abiturus.
He is gone a hunting; to hunt.	Ivit venatum.
Thou haſt no cauſe to complain-; -of complaining.	Nullam habes cauſam querendi.
Very deſirous to goe (of going) back.	Cupidiſſimus redeundi
The greateſt allurement to ſin, is hope of ſparing.	Maxima peccandi illecebra, ſpes eſt impunitatis.
Take time to adviſe.	Sume diem ad deliberandum.
He roſe very earlie to ſtudy.	Surrexit admodum diluculo ad ſtudendum; ſtudendi gratiâ.
I have my Brother to intreat yet.	Reſtat mihi frater adhuc exorandus.
What doſt thou appoint me to doe?	Quid mihi præſcribis faciendum?
I Commend my Son to you to be taught.	Commendo tibi filium docendum.
I am come to intreat that I might.	Veni ut rogarem, ut liceret mihi.
I deſire thee to be (or that thou wouldeſt be) gone.	Oro te, ut abeas.
I know not what to doe.	Neſcio quid faciam.
Send thy man before to enquire.	Præmitte famulum, qui quærat.
Art thou a fit man to teach me?	Tune es idoneus, qui me doceas?
He gave me a Book to read, but not worth reading; not worthy to be read.	Dedit mihi librum legendum (quem legerem) at indignum, quæ legatur.
Here is a pen-knife for you to make a pen withall.	Hem tibi ſcalpellum, quo pennam exacuas.

He was not come back in the morning, but now he is come back.
Mane non redierat, ſed nunc rediit.

Thou art come ſooner then I looked.
Veniſti celeriùs opinione.

I was gone abroad before thou wer't up.
Prodieram foras priùs, quàm tu ſurrexeras.

I am undone, if he be gone away.
Si ille abiit, perii.

I am runn out of breath.
Cucurri uſque dum fatiſcit ſpiritus.

The Apple is ripe.
Pomum maturuit.

You are a fool to believe-; -for believing him.
Stultus es, qui huic credas.

You know what account I make of him.
Scis quanti eum faciam.

About (readie) to fall.
Ruiturus.

He deſerves to be praiſed.
Laudandus eſt.

He ſhould have been puniſhed.
Plectendus eſſet.

The better Gameſter at Dice, the worſe Man.
Aleator quanto doctior, tanto nequior.

They differ but about one thing.
De unâ ſolùm re diſſident.

But for this one time.
Hâc tantùm vice.

There is not a day but he cometh to me.
Nullus eſt dies quin (quo non) ad me ventitet.

You can reliſh nothing but roaſt-meat.
Nihil tibi ſapit præter aſſa.

What elſe is it to dance, but to play the fool?
Quid aliud eſt ſaltare, niſi ineptire.

He doth nothing but play.
Nil niſi ludit.

I ſent no Letters but to you.
Nullas dedi Literas præterquam ad te.

Nothing but what was well adviſed went from him.
Nil niſi conſideratum prodibat ex ejus ore.

I cannot but weep.	Non poſſum non flere; quin fleam.
One by one.	Sigillatim.
From dore to dore.	Oſtiatim.
Word for word.	Verbatim.
Take heed thou doſt it not.	Cave feceris.
See thou come back.	Fac redeas.
Thou mayſt be gone.	Licet abeas.
He is above three miles off	Amplius tria millia paſſuum abeſt.
Why riſe you not?	Quin ſurgis?
I am ſore afraid.	Admodum timeo.
Without pains.	Citra pulverem.
I am obliged; engaged to thee.	Sum in tuo ære.
You can do much with him.	Tu multum; plurimum potes apud eum.
At his Maſter's beck.	Ad domini nutum.
Till broad day-light.	Ad clarum diem.
For this cauſe.	Hac de causâ.
Thou mayſt be gone for all me.	Licet abeas per me.
Out of gun-ſhot.	Extra telum; teli jactum.
It will not be for thy profit.	Non erit ex re ſuâ, in rem tuam.
Conſidering his worth, he is not uſed with reſpect enough.	Pro ejus dignitate minus honorificè tractatur
According to the ſuddain accident; as the caſe ſtood.	E re natâ.
Not amiſs.	Non abs re.
He is on our ſide	A nobis ſtat.
He is one of Plato's *Sect.*	Eſt à *Platone.*
He is the Kings Counſellor.	Regi eſt à conſiliis.
He was thy Footman.	Erat tibi à pedibus.

Before and behind.	A fronte & à tergo.
At ſupper time.	Super; inter cœnam.
About ten talents.	Ad decem talenta.
Word for word.	Ad verbum; verbum de verbo.
At my houſe.	Apud me; domi meæ.
In his right mind.	Apud ſe; compos mentis.
It is to be found in Virgil.	Habetur apud *Virgilium.*
In the days of yore; Among our Anceſtors.	Apud majores.
In jeſt; ſport.	Per jocum; ludum.
For this preſent.	In præſentia, in præſens, in præſenti.
Every hour.	In horas.
One with another.	Inter ſe.
What employment is he fit for?	Quas ad res aptus eſt?
Here's a penn for thee to write with.	Hem tibi pennam quâ ſcribas
This is the Man I told of.	Hic eſt de quo locutus ſum tibi.
You ſhould have told me this before.	Debuiſti prædicere.
Lay the burden upon me.	Impone mihi hoc onus.
I will goe preſently to the Man.	Illico adibo hominem.
He goes to bed ſupperleſs; without his Supper.	It cubitum incœnatus.
Shew thy ſelf a Man.	Præſta te virum.
He will prove a Scholar.	Evadet doctus.
He is held an excellent Divine.	Theologiæ peritiſſimus, habetur.
He is reported to be (hath the report of) a ſpend-thrift.	Audit Nepos.

I had rather goe on foot, than on horſeback.	Mallem ire pedes, quàm eques.
He is ſick of a quartain (fever.)	Laborat quartanâ. ſc. febre.
To give him a Civick Crown.	Donare civicâ. ſc. coronâ.
To pour on cold water.	Frigidam ſuffundere. ſc. aquam.
To hold the firſt parts; to be the chief.	Primas tenere. ſc. partes.
Which way? that way.	Quâ? illâc. ſc. viâ.
At my charge.	De meo. ſc. ære, vel ſumptu.
There is a thing that I would tell thee.	Eſt quod tibi indicarem.
There are ſome, that ſay ſo.	Sunt, qui affirmant.
There is a thing that troubles me.	Eſt quod me malè habet.
There is no room for me to ſit.	Non eſt ubi ſedeam.
You have cauſe to be glad.	Eſt, quod gaudeas.
We are moſt deſirous of thoſe things that are moſt hurtfull to us.	Quæ maximè nobis nocent, ea maximè appetimus.
I will not hinder you from ſtudying.	Per me non ſtabit, quo minus ſtudeas.
Nothing hindred you from writing.	Nihil obſtitit quo minùs ſcriberes.
Buſineſſes hindred me from writing back.	Negotia me impedierunt, quo minùs ſcriberem.
What trade art thou of?	Quam artem factitas?
Let your hook be always hanging.	Semper tibi pendeat hamus.
They were two days journy off.	Aberant bidui. ſc. viam.
What's the matter?	Quid rei eſt?

You see what a kind of man he is.	Vides quid sit hominis.
If any matter of mony remain.	Si quid nummorum erit reliquum.
I went not a wenching at that age; at those years.	Ego istuc ætatis non amori operam dabam.
A poor deal of Wine.	Minimum vini.
At this time of the day.	Hoc diei.
What sickness is this?	Quid hoc morbi est?
So much mony, so much credit.	Quantum pecuniæ, tantum fidei.
This poor piece of a letter.	Hoc literularum.
The way is much of the same length.	Tantundem viæ est.
He hath just his Master's conditions.	Domini est simillimus.
He is not able to pay.	Non est solvendo *sub.* idoneus.
They carry things fit to put out the fire.	Ea portantquæ restinguendo igni forent. sc. idonea.
He endureth cold the best of any man living.	Est omnium qui vivunt, algoris patientissimus.
I am the neerest to you of any man.	Tibi me propior nemo est.
Ask his advice about this.	Consule illum hoc.
I can eat beef heartily.	Vescor bubulâ lubentissimè sc. carne.
I will take the same course that thou doest.	Eodem tecum utar consilio.
I imitate / envy } thee	Æmulor } te / tibi.
No man understands me.	Non intelligor ulli.
Cicero *salutes you.*	Salvebis *à Cicerone.*
I shall beware of him that he hurt me not.	Cavebo ab illo ne mihi noceat.
He is in a grosse error.	Errorem erravit spissum.

You

You will be hartily glad.	Solidum gaudebis gaudium.
What pranks would he play?	Quos ludos luderet?
This is a ſecret to us; we are ignorant of it.	Hoc nos latet.
He came to the relief of the Townſmen.	Oppidanis ſuppetias venit.
It caſts an ugly ſmel.	Tetrum odorem ſpirat.
What hadſt thou to ſupper?	Quid cœnâſti?
They know not the way.	Semitam non ſapiunt.
It ſmels of ſaffron.	Olet crocum.
I am ſorry for you.	Doleo tuam vicem.
I deny it.	Eo inficias.
The day will fail me.	Deficiet me dies.
You are ſure to be puniſht.	Pœna vos manet.
To die.	Mortem occumbere.
Hands off; forbear.	Abſtine manum.
I wraſtle with, out of troubles.	Eluctor difficultates
I mind only this; this is all I mind.	Studeo hoc unum; in hoc unum.
To quicken his ſpeed, flight.	Celerare fugam.
He is ſeven years old.	Eſt annorum ſeptem.
It is for { *Subjects to obey. Kings to command.*	Eſt { Subditi parere. / Regis imperare. } { ſc. officium.
It came into my mind, head.	Venit mihi in mentem.
He ſtudies Phyſick.	Studet Medicinæ.
There is room for you.	Locus vacat tibi.
He minds philoſophy.	Vacat Philoſophiæ.
Be ruled by me.	Auſculta mihi.
What troubles you?	Quid tibi dolet?
I yield to thee.	Accedo tibi.

Come.

Come into the house.	Succede ædibus.
I was by, when he preached; --present at the sermon.	Interfui concioni.
I had a mind; desire.	Incessit mihi cupiditas.
I am not in fault.	Vaco culpâ.
He is convicted of theft.	Tenetur furti.
To condemn to death.	Damnare capitis.
He sued him in an action of trespass.	Egit injuriarum cum illo.
To accuse of Treason.	Læsæ majestatis arcessere; insimulare.
He is accused of Bribery.	Postulare de repetundis, *sc.* pecuniis.
He accuseth him of a crime	Arguit / Arcessit. } eum crimine.
He set fire on the house; the house on fire.	Injecit ignem ædibus.
I bought this for you.	Hoc mercatus sum tibi.
Set pen to paper.	Inprime pennam chartæ.
He deceived; cousened me; put a trick upon me.	Imposuit mihi.
He committed this to my trust.	Credidit hoc meæ fidei.
He forbad me his house; -discharged me of his house.	Interdixit; prohibuit mihi domum.
I'le have nothing to do with your friendship, entertainment, &c.	Renuncio amicitiæ, hospitio, muneri, &c.
I will take a course; provide for thee.	Prospiciam; consulam; cavebo tibi.
I promise thee this.	Hoc tibi recipio.
Answer me this.	Hoc mihi responde.
He will not let me have my Book.	Prohibet mihi librum.

I will put thee by all thy shifts.	Præcludam tibi omnia subterfugia.
He gave me a box on the ear.	Impegit mihi colaphum.
Forgive me this fault.	Condona mihi hoc delictum.
Will you command me any service?	Ecquid mihi imperabis?
I suppose they have no mony.	Suspicor nihil argenti esse illis.
I'le look to that.	Hoc mihi curæ erit.
Put him in mind of his duty.	Admone illum officii.
We are warned of many things.	Multa admonemur.
He kept these things from his father.	Hæc patrem celavit.
I entreat this of you.	Te hoc obsecro.
They are asked their opinion.	Rogantur sententiam.
Let me prevail with you.	Sine te exorem.
He has his gown on.	Induitur togam.
Skillful in Greek.	Literas Græcas eruditus.
Well skilled in martial discipline.	Edoctus belli artes.
He stript him of his goods; of all.	Exuit eum bonis.
Let him loose; be made to go without his supper.	Multetur cœna.
I have wip'd the old man of his mony.	Emunxi argento senem.
He is of; has a lowring look.	Fronte est caperatâ.
When he had spoken these words.	His verbis dictis.
He is gone a hunting.	Abiit venatum.

Your

Your letting him doe as he lists, makes him grow every day worse than other,
Usque adeò permittis eum quidvis pro libitu facere, ut quotidiè frat seipso deterior.

He is busie a writing.
Occupatus est scribendo.

Leave off; leave your prating.
Desiste garriendo.

I set it a sunning.
Posui ad insolandum.

I am to write letters.
Scribendæ sunt mihi literæ.

I must write out this Book.
Exscribendus est mihi hic Liber.

In writing letters.
In scriben { do literas. / dis literis.

I have no leisure to write a letter.
Non est mihi otium scriben { dæ epistolæ. / di epistolam.

I am not at leisure.
Non vacat mihi.

Thou mayst for all me.
Licet tibi per me.

Besides my purpose.
Alienum institutis meis.

What will become of me?
Quid mihi; de me fiet?

To swear by Jove.
Jovem jurare (per

A child of that age.
Puer id ætatis (ad.

Many things of like sort.
Id genus alia (secundum.

The last day of January.
Pridie calendas *Februarii* (ante.

The third day of January.
Tertio nonas *Januarii* (ante.

Hard by.
In proximo. (loco.

In safety.
In tuto. (loco.

In readiness.
In promptu.

By Sea and Land.	Terrâ marique.
He is of no account with us.	Nullo est numero apud nos.
Be of good courage.	Bono sis animo.
A man of great Age.	Homo provectâ ætate.
Lame of his feet.	Claudus pedibus.
Red haired.	Crine ruber.
On that condition.	Eâ lege.
For thy sake.	Tuâ causâ.
Of a good age.	Grandis natu.
He is sick of a disease; fever, want.	Laborat morbo; febri; penuriâ.
I salute you.	Impertio te salute.
In confidence of your courtesie.	Fretus tuâ humanitate.
He is not able to speak for grief.	Præ mœrore fari nequit.
Of the same mould, temper	De eadem fideliâ.
To be angry for nothing.	De nihilo irasci.
She has had a child by Pamphilus.	Peperit è *Pamphilo.*
You shall not buy it but at a dear rate.	Non parabis nisi immenso pretio.
You ask too much for your wares.	Liceris nimiò merces.
You offer a pennie for it.	Licitaris denario.
To set at nought.	Pro nihilo putare; ducere.
How dost thou prize this house?	Quanti indicas has ædes?
Not under ten pounds.	Non minoris quàm decem minis.
It is not worth so much.	Non est tanti.
One eye-witness is worth a thousand ear-witnesses.	Pluris oculatus testis unus; quàm mille auriti.
I care not a straw for thee.	Non pili te facio.
I take it in good part.	Boni consulo.

I weigh it not thus much.	Hujus non pendo.
It weigheth three drams.	Pendet tres drachmas.
Go not a nails breadth from the truth.	Ne transversum unguem discedas à recto.
Two days journey off.	Abest bidui iter.
Less by the half.	Dimidio minor.
A City ungarded.	Urbs præsidio nudâ.
To stand to the bargain.	Stare pactis.
To relie upon vertue.	Virtute niti.
Well born.	Honesto loco natus.
Come of a great house.	Genere clarissimo; splendidâ familiâ ortus.
I am a Louth *man, but my ancestors were of* Yorkshire.	Sum *Ludensis*, at oriundus ex agro *Eboracensi*.
He went out at three a clock.	Prodiit tertiâ horâ.
Within this two days we shall know.	Biduo; intra biduum sciemus.
In sleep time.	Per quietem.
You sleep till broad day?	Stertis ad multum diem.
For this three years full.	Per totum triennium.
By night.	De nocte.
For a year; month.	In annum; mensem.
For many years past.	Multis retro annis.
At this time of the night.	Hoc noctis.
Till late at night.	Ad multam noctem.
You sleep till fair day.	Ad clarum diem dormis.
Eight days hence.	Ad octavum hinc diem.
For the space of some years.	Aliquot per annos.
Day after day.	Diem ex die.
Six years agoe; since.	Ante sex annos; sex abhinc annis.
Since when; since then.	Ex quo: ex illo.

It is a twelve month since I saw him.	Annus est ex quæ eum vidi; quod eum non vidi.
I being his Author; setter on.	Me authore.
In Ireland.	In *Hibernia*.
At Dublin; Carthage; Venice.	*Dublinii*; *Carthagine*, *Venetiis*.
He came from about Rome; *from the parts about* Rome.	Venit à *Româ*.
These things were done before or neer Ilerda.	Hæc ad *Ilerdam* geruntur.
He departed from before Mutinâ.	Discessit à *Mutinâ*.
I sit next Pompey.	Proximè *Pompeium* sedeo.
I shall rise; be up; get out of bed sooner than I I was wont.	Surgam maturiùs solito.
Above half a mile.	Amplius quingentis passibus.
What do you touching of us?	Quid tibi nos est tactio?
To gape after an inheritance.	Inhiare hæreditatem.
I had a desire; mind.	Incessit me cupido.
I know not which way to take.	Nescio quam viam insistam.
I will give over my enterprise.	Desistam incœpto.
I forbear to speak of many things.	Pluribus supersedeo.
Born to glory.	Natus gloriæ; ad gloriam.
He spake not a word of thee.	De te nihil meminit.
He came to that height of pride.	Eo insolentiæ processit.
As far as it is possible to be done.	Quoad ejus fieri potest.

This

This For the first storing of the Learners Head and Memory with Phrases. Then for the Second, the Teaching him how to use them. This is easily shewn him, by but composing three or four Englishes (Epistles or the like) of some pretty length, all, or most, of words capable of amplification by Periphrases and causing the Scholar first to translate them according to the Verbal, and then out of his memory and by the help of his Phrase-Books, according to the periphrastical way of Translating. This may be an Example.

Loving Friend,

It is commonly reported, that you are sick. Truly I am very sorry for that. But I am much more sorry, that you got your sickness (for that they say too) by drinking too much. I earnestly desire you, first to repent of your having been drunk, and then to seek to recover your health. And if it please God that you ever be well again, then have a care to live healthfully and soberly for time to come. This will be very pleasing to all your friends and especially to

Your very Loving Friend

T. A.

Ægrotare te Amice, Vulgò dictum est. Eâ profectò re multùm doleo. Atqui hanc te (quod item ferunt) ægritudinem largiùs bibendo contraxisse, id vero mihi multo magis dolet. Vehementer te oro, primùm ut ebrietatis te tuæ pœniteat, deindè uti des operam, quo convaleſcas.

Quod ſi Deo erit viſum, ut aliquando è morbo revaleas, id tibi curæ ſit, cùm ut ſanus, tum ut ſobrius deinceps vivas: Hoc tuis omnibus valdè erit gratum, inprimis autem

Tui Studioſiſſimo

T. A.

Valetudine te iniquâ, Amice præchariſſime, tentari, in ore omnium verſatur. Ea ſanè res graviſſimo me dolore afficit. Quod autem nimium indulgendo poculis (nam id quoque omnium ſermone percrebuit) iſtum in morbum incideris, longè graviori mœrore animi afflictus ſum! Majorem in modum à te peto, primum, ut pœnitenti velis eſſe animo, quod immodicum ingurgitando potum ebrietatem contraxeris, deinde ut amiſſæ recuperandæ ſanitati operam ſedulam naves. Si verò Divina aſpirante gratiâ, futurum id unquam ſit, ut priſtinam ad valetudinem reſtituaris, toto tum pectore hanc incumbe in curam, ut & illæſam corporis ſanitatem conſerves: & ad normam ſobrietatis te in poſterum conformes. Hac tu ratione es illud facturus, quod cùm univerſis amicis tuis erit gratiſſimum, tum multo gratius.

Tui amantiſsimo

T. A.

By a few exerciſes, after this manner performed, the Scholar will quickly diſcern the *Uſe*, as well as the *Elegancy* of Latine Phraſes; and delight and labour, that all his Latines may ſwell and ſhine with ſuch like Enlargements and Adornments. For his Uſe to this purpoſe, amongſt the many extant I recommend the little Phraſe-Book put forth

forth by Mr. *Farnaby*; as also that larger by Mr. *Huise*; but especially that Book of Phrases compiled by Dr. *Robinson* going under the name of the Latine Phrases of *Winchester School*. And thus much of this matter.

CHAP. VII.

Of Variation of Phrases.

TO enable the Scholar the better to make use of his Phrases, as also to enrich him with the greater store of them, *Variation of the Phrases* will be very conducing. Of this therefore let the Teacher first give him some *Rules*, and then put him upon the practice.

For Rules, He may furnish him with them according to his discretion out of his own Observation: Or if he think good he may make use of this Collection.

Rules of Variation.

First, a *Verb Active* may be varied by a *Verb Passive*, by putting the Nominative Case of the Active Verb into the Ablative with *a* or *ab*; and the Accusative into the Nominative, making the Verb agree with it in Number and Person: as,

Ego lego Virgilium
Virgilius *legitur à me.*

Sometimes the Nominative before the Verb Active, may be the Dative after the Passive: as,

Non me ullus intelligit. *Id vitium nullus notaverat.*
Non intelligor ulli. *Id vitium nulli notatum erat*

But this is most used in Poets.

If the Verb Active govern a Dative case of the Person, then it will not be convenient to vary the Nominative Case before it by a Dative Case after the Verb Passive; because then there will be two Datives together: And therefore we vary not, *Referam tibi gratiam* by *Referetur mihi tibi gratia*, but by *Refertur tibi à me gratia.*

The Dative case after *videor* [I seem] is not variable by an Ablative case with a Preposition. *vide Voss.* Lat. Gram. p. 51.

2. A *verb Passive* may be varied by a *verb Active*, by putting the Nominative Case into the Accusative, and the Dative or Ablative into the Nominative; and making the verb agree with it in number and person: as,

Viris bonis honesta petuntur. — *Ille ab his laudatur.*
Viri boni honesta petunt. — *Hi illum laudant.*
Ab hostibus constanter pugnatur. — *Occuritur nobis à doctis.*
Hostes constanter pugnant. — *Docti nobis occurrunt.*

3. The *Ablative Case Absolute* may be varied by putting the Ablative into the Nominative, and turning the Participle into a Verb with some of these Particles, *dum, cum, quando, si,* in such mood as the Particle used therewith, requires: as,

Rege veniente / *Dum veniret Rex* } *hostes fugerunt.*

Imperante Augusto. / *Cùm imperabat* Augustus. } *natus est Christus.*

Superbo regnante; / *Quando Superbus regnabat.* } *in* Italiam *venit.*

Note if there be no *Participle* expressed together with

with the Ablative caſe abſolute, then the Participle *ente* or *exiſtente* is underſtood, and the variation will be made by *ſum, fui*, &c. as,

Me [*exiſtente*] *duce.* } *vinces.*
Si ego dux fuero. }

Credo pudicitiam { *Saturno* [*ente*] *rege* / *Quando Saturnus rex erat.* } *moratam in terris.*

4. *The Nominative caſe* with his verb and Particle, may be varied by turning the Nominative caſe into the Ablative; and (the Particle being put away) the verb into a participle agreeing with it: as,

Poſtquam arbor dejicitur.
Arbore dejectâ.

5. An *Adjective* that hath *res* expreſſed with it, may be varied by putting away *res*, and putting the Adjective into the neuter Gender: as,

Deus { *res omnes* / *omnia* } *ex nihilo creavit.*

6. An *Adjective of the neuter gender* whoſe ſubſtantive is *res* underſtood, may be varied by expreſſing *res*, and putting the adjective into the gender agreeing with it; as,

Unum quodque
Rem unam quamque } *ſuo deſignare nomine.*

Id forſan difficile
Forſan res ea difficilis } *eſt.*

7. The *latter of two ſubſtantives* being a Genitive caſe of Poſſeſſion, may be varied by an Adjective Poſſeſſive agreeing in caſe with the former Subſtantive; & *vice verſâ*: as,

Domus

Domus patris; paterna domus,
Heri filius, filius heri. See Treat. of Partic. ch. of Rule 1. of Note 4.

8. An *Adjective Absolute in the neuter Gender* with his Genitive case, may be varied by putting the Substantive of the Genitive case into the case of the Adjective; and the Adjective of the neuter gender into the gender of the Substantive: as

Hoc noctis; Hac nocte.

Per { *diversa terrarum* / *terras diversas* } *distractus est.*

9. An *Adjective with his Substantive* wherewith he agrees in case, may many times be elegantly varied by putting the Adjective into the neuter gender (if it already be not) and the Substantive into the genitive case: as,

Ne { *eum quidem leporem* / *id quidem leporis.* } *habuerunt*, Cic.

Mihi { *hoc negotium* / *hoc negotii* } *dedêre*, Ter.

Quis hic homo? Quid hoc hominis? Ter.

Huic { *alia merces* / *aliud mercedis* } *erit*, Virg.

Per { *gentes terrasque diversas* / *diversa gentium terrarumq;* } *volitabat*, Flor.

10. The *Accusative case before the Infinitive mood* may be varied by turning the Accusative into the Nominative, and the infinitive mood into the Indicative with *quod* or *ut*, accordingly as to those Particles require: as,

Te incolumem rediisse / *Quod tu redieris incolumis.* } *gaudeo.*

Te

Te abire } *Jubeo.*
Ut tu abeas }

Note, The Infinitive mood may not be reſolved into another mood with *quod* or *ut* indifferently: but ſometimes by *quod*; ſometimes by *ut*. Directions in this Caſe you have in the *Treatiſe of Engliſh Particles*, in the Chapter of the Particle, *That*.

11. The Nominative caſe with his verb having *quod* or *ut* with it, may be varied by putting away *quod* and *ut*; and turning the Nominative caſe into the Accuſative, and the Verb into the Infinitive mood: as,

Quod tu bene vales } *gaudeo.*
Te bene valere }
Ut tu fabulam agas } *volo.*
Te agere fabulam }

12. The Verb *habeo* may be varied by the Verb *ſum*, by putting that word into the Dative caſe; which was the Nominative before *habeo*: and that into the Nominative, which after *habeo* was the Accuſative: as,

Ego habeo domi patrem.
Eſt mihi domi pater.
Non habeo ego argentum.
Non eſt mihi argentum.

13. The *Genitive caſe* governed of *a Noun Partitive*, may be varied by a Prepoſition, and ſuch caſe as he governs: & *vice verſâ*: as,

Quorum } *alter te ſcientiâ augere poteſt*, Cic.
E quibus }
Major juvenum; *De juvenibus major*, Hor.
Multæ iſtarum arborum } *manu meâ ſatæ ſunt*,
Ex arboribus iſtis multæ } Cic.

The

14. The *Genitive case after a Superlative Degree* may be varied by *é, ex.* with an Ablative; or *inter* with an Accusative case: as,

Virgilius *doctissimus* { *Poëtarum.* / *ex Poëtis.* / *inter Poëtas.*

15. The *Infinitive Mood Active* after a Verb of *Motion*, or denoting any *Intention*, may be varied several wayes. For instance *Venio salutare matrem.* may be varied. (1.) By the first Supine; as *Venio salutatum matrem.* (2.) By a Participle in *rus*; as, *Venio salutaturus matrem.* (3.) Thirdly by a Gerund in *di* with *ergò, gratiâ, causâ*; as *Matrem salutandi causâ venio* (4.) By a Gerund in *dum* with a Preposition; as *Venio ad salutandum matrem.* (5.) By a Gerundive with *ergò, gratiâ, causâ*; as *Matris salutandæ gratiâ venio.* (6.) By a Gerundive with a Preposition; as, *Ad matrem salutandam venio.* (7.) By a Subjunctive mood with *ut*; as *Matrem ut salutem, venio.*

Note, Every one of these ways of varying may be varied by all, or the most of the other ways: as the first Supine by the Infinitive mood; Participle in *rus*; Gerund; Gerundive; Verb. So the Participle in *rus* may be varied by the infinitive Mood; first Supine, Gerund, Gerundive, Verb. So the Gerund in *dum* by the infinitive mood; first Supine; Participle in *rus*; Gerund in *di* with *causâ*, &c. Gerundive with Preposition; Verb with *ut*, So Gerundive by Infinitive mood, &c. So Verb of Subjunctive mood with *ut*, by infinitive mood, &c.

16. The *Infinitive Mood Passive after an Adjective*, may be varied several ways; for instance, *dignus est amari*, may be varied. (1.) By the latter Supine, as *dignus est amatu.* (2.) By a Verb of the Subjunctive

junctive mood with *ut*, as, *Dignus est, ut ametur*; or *qui*, as, *dignus est qui ametur*; *quem ames.* (3.) By a Noun of a cognate original and signification, as, *dignus est amore.*

Note. Every one of these ways of varying may be varied by the other. The Supine by the Infinitive Mood, the Subjunctive Mood with his Particles; and the Noun. The Subjunctive with his Particle by the Infinitive Mood and the Supine. And the Noun by the other ways of varying before mentioned.

Note also, that the using of the Infinitive Mood after the Adjective, is Poetical or Historical.

17. The *Comparative Degree* may be varied,

(1.) By his *Positive* with *magis* and *quàm*: as,

Vilius argentum est auro.

Magis vile est argentum, quàm aurum.

(2.) By his *Positive* with *Comparative* Particles *tam, quàm, proinde atque* and having a negative adverb *non*, or *haud* before the former of them: as

Virtus est auro pretiosior.

Non tam } *pretiosum* { *quàm*
Haud perinde } *est* { *atque* } *virtus.*
Non æquè } *aurum.* { *ac*

18. The *Superlative Degree* may be varied.

(1. By the *Comparative Degree*, as

Elegantissimus omnium Philosophorum.

Philosophis omnibus }
Quàm Philosophi omnes } *elegantior.*

(2.) By the *Positive* with { *Nemo* / *Nihil* } { *tam*, or *ita*, *ut* or } { *quisquam* / *quicquam* } with *non*, or *haud*, *perinde*, or *æque ac*; *ut*; *atque*: as,

Tam elegans, ut nemo philosophorum.

Ita elegans, ut è Philosophis nemo.

Inter omnes Philosophos non est quisquam perinde elegans ac; or *haud quisquam æquè est elegans atque.*

19. *Single*

19. *Single words* may be varied several ways.

1. By their own several cases, and that ——

(1.) Without any variation of the whole sentence according to several Grammar Rules in part already touched upon, and yet further observable by the heeding Reader.)

Est ubi in Dativum vertitur, &c.	*Laus & vituperium*, &c.
Opus autem adjectivè, &c.	*Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem*, &c.
Communis, alienus, &c.	*Natus, commodus*, &c.
Magnitudinis mensura, &c.	*Adjectiva quæ ad copiam*, &c.
Nomina diversitatis, &c,	*Horum nonnulla*, &c.

(2.) With some light variation of the whole Sentence: as

Sapientia rerum omnium præstantissima est.
Sapientiæ præ rebus omnibus summa est præstantia.
Sapientiæ } *non omnes præterea in universo res*
Sapientiam } *præstant.*
O sapientia! quanam è rebus omnibus æque ac tu præstans est!
Sapientiâ inter omnes uspiam in orbe toto res nihil est præstantius.

2. By their *Synonymas*: as

Ensis, gladius. Amo, diligo. sæpe, frequenter.

3. By their *Equipollents*; *nullus*; *non ullus*.

Aliquis; non nemo: aliquando; nonnunquam; rarò; non sæpè; doctus; non indoctus; bonus; minimè malus.

4. By their *Periphrases*: as

Philosophus: *Vir sapientiæ studiosus.*
Ovidius: *Sulmonensis Vates.*
Occidere; *vitâ privare.*

Rhe.

Rhetorica Ars ornatè dicendi.

5. By an Enallage.

(1.) Of a Noun.

1. For a *Verb*: as *Judicent alii; Aliorum esto judicium.*

2. For a *Participle*; as *Hoc* { *te impellente* / *tuo impulsu* } *fecit.*

3. For an *Adverb*: as *Late* { *Latè* / *Lætus* } *istuc audio.*

(2.) Of a *Verb* for a Noun; as

Scientia tua / *Scire tuum* } *nihil est.*

(3.) Of a Participle for a Verb; as

Consulis / *Consulto* } *opus est.*

(4.) Of an *Infinitive Mood* for the Indicative as

Ex illo { *fluebant* / *fluere* } *res Danaum.*

(5.) Of a *Present tense* for a Preterimperfect Tense; as

Tu si hic { *esses* / *sis* } { *aliter* } { *Sentires.* / *Sentias.* }

6. Of the *Plural Number* for the Singular, as:

Ego populo imposui.

Nos populo imposuimus.

(7.) Of the *Second Person* for the third with his Nominative Case, as

Qui unum norit, omnes norit.

Unum noris, omnes noris.

6. By Tropes of Rhetorick,

(1.) A Metonymie of { *Belli* / *Martis* } *vis perculit.*

the *Efficient*: as *Eos*,

Or of the { *Sunt Itali restes.* / *Testis est Italia.* }

Subject: as

Or

Or of the *Adjunct*; as { *Cedat paci bellum.* / *Cedant arma togæ.*

(2.) An *Irony* of the contrary: as,

Vir male rem negligenter gessisti.
Bone vir curâsti probè.

(3.) A Metaphor: as,

Omnes { *excitantur* / *incenduntur* } *ad studia gloriâ.*

(4.) A *Senecdoche* of the *Member*: as,

In magno periculo eram, quod eadem urbe iisdem mœnibus continerémur.

Or of the *Whole*: as, { *Imperium Romanum.* / *Orbis terrarum* } *ardet bello.*

Or of the *Species*: as, { *Interfector* / *Parricida* } *civium interficitur.*

Orator eloquentissimus; *Alter* Cicero.

Or of the *Genus*: as *Perdidimus Catilinam. hominem.*

Venientibus malis obstat { *Fortitudo.* / *virtus.* }

20. *Sentences* may be also varied by several ways.

1. By turning the *Affirmative* speech into a *Negative*, and contrariwise a *Negative* into an *Affirmative*: as,

1. *Avaritia vitium est teterrimum.*
Nullum est vitium tetrius quàm avaritia.
Est vir prudentiâ singulari.
Non vulgaris est viri prudentia.

2. *Non parva est peccandi illecebra impunitas.*
Impunitas peccandi maxima est illecebra.
Nihil meum est, quod auferre potest.
Meum id omne est, quod conferri non potest.

2. By

2. By turning the *Assertive* Speech into an *Interrogative*: and contrarywise *Interrogative* into *Assertive*: as,

1. *Avaritia vitium est fœdissimum.*
Quod vitium fœdius est avaritiâ?
Nihil est absurdius, quàm, quo minus viæ restat, eo plus viatici quærere.
Potest quicquam esse absurdius, quàm quo minus —,
Acerba audire tolerabilius est, quàm videre?
Annon est tolerabilius acerba audire, quàm videre.
(2.) *Annon sunt incerti bellorum omnium exitus?*
Omnium bellorum exitus incerti sunt.
Id ne appellandum est onus, quod cum lætitiâ feras?
Onus non est appellandum, quod cum lætitia feras.

3. By turning *Assertive* Speeches into *Admirative*, and contrarywise *Admirative* into *Assertive* Speeches: as,

(1.) *Omnia sunt misera in bellis civilibus.*
Quàm misera sunt omnia in bellis civilibus!
(2.) *Quàm timeo quorsum evadas?*
Quorsum evadas magnopere timeo.

4. By turning *Assertive* Speeches into *Exclamations*: and contrarywise *Exclamatory* into *Assertory* Speeches; as,

(1.) *Homo est admirandâ scientiâ.*
O admirandam hominis scientiam!
(2.) *O fortunatos nimium agricolas, si —*
Fortunati nimium forent agricolæ, si —.

The better to enable him to make use of these Rules, and perform his Variation in Latine, it will be convenient to begin his variation of Phrase in English, rendring one English into another, of the same sense in other words, for instance.

In Affirmative Speeches.

I affect thee very much. I love thee very much. Thou art much very beloved of me. I have a very great affection towards thee. I have a very great love for thee. My love to thee is very great. My affection towards thee is very great. My love is very much set on thee. Thou art very far in my favour. Oh how I love thee! What an affection have I for thee?

In Negative Speeches.

It was not long of me that you were beaten. It came not through me that you were beaten. It was not through me that you were beaten. It was not because of me that you were beaten. It is not my fault that you were beaten. It is no fault of mine that you were beaten. I am not to be blamed for your being beaten. I was not the cause of your beating. I was not the cause of your being beaten. I did not cause you to be beaten. I did not cause your beating. Your beating was not caused by me. Your beating came not by the means of me. Your beating came not through my means. I occasioned not---, or I was no occasion of your beating. Did I occasion your beating? Was I any cause of your being beaten?

In Interrogative Speeches.

What a clock is it? How goes the clock? How goes the day? What time of the day is it? How spends the day? What hour of the day is it?

In Epiphonematical Speeches.

Such truth is there in that old saying. Such truth there is in what was said of old. So much truth there is in that old saying. So true is that old saying. So true is that which was said of old. So truly was it said of old. So truely did they of old say. That truth there is in that

that old ſaying. With that truth was it ſaid by them of old.

And once for all; if any deſire any further inſight into this moſt profitable exerciſe, he may conſult Mr. *Clark's Dux Oratorius*, written chiefly on that Subject, wherein beſides rules of Variation, there are almoſt infinite of varied examples: *Eraſmus Colloquies* p. 82. and *Edit. Londini* 1631. *Buchler's Elegances* p. 111. Dr. *Robinſon's Phraſes*, in the end: and the moſt accompliſhed *Comenius's Artis Oratoriæ ſive Grammaticæ Elegantis*, c. 5. which moſt choice piece I owe to the kindneſs of the worthy Mr. *Henry Edmondſon*, then one of the Maſters in the School of *Tunbridge*, and do recommend to the peruſal of all young both Teachers and Learners. And thus much for Rules.

Now for Practice. The uſual way, I preſume, is to give the Learner ſentences of ſeveral formes, and put him to the varying of them. I condemn it not; it hath its uſe, its profit. But the Practice, that I would recommend, ſhould be upon his daily Leſſons: the Maſter firſt, by a line drawn underneath, noting to him what words and phraſes, are capable of ſuch variation, as he hath Rules for, and then cauſing him to vary thoſe words and phraſes, according to his Rules, ſtill informing and helping him in what he fails through want of memory or underſtanding. After he is a little experienced, he is to be put to find out of himſelf what words or phraſes in his Leſſon, are variable, and accordingly to vary them. This exerciſe with a competent underſtanding will in a ſhort ſpace produce a ſtrange alteration to the better in all the Latines of the Scholar. This may be done on the Repetition-day; but the oftener the better. *Experto crede.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Elegancies of the Particles.

A Freſh variety of choice Phraſes goes far in the Elegancie of a Latine Exerciſe: but nothing better ſets it off, than the interweavings of the *Particles*. Theſe, like thoſe gold and ſilver filings, wherewith *Baſſianus* ſtrew'd the Roman pavements make a Latine ſmooth, and radiant: or, as thoſe upper Conſtellations do the Firmament, they beſpangle an Oration, rendring it illuſtrious and glorious. One ſhall oft be raviſhed with admiration at the delicacy of a *Ciceronian* Period, and yet, when all comes to all, not be able to ſay, what more charmed, and took his phanſie, than the orient ſparklings of ſome interwoven elegant Particles. This hath drawn ſo many Perſons of excellent learning not only to take eſpecial notice, but writ particular Tracts of the Elegancies of theſe. Not to Inſiſt what *Robertus Stephanus* hath done in his *Theſaurus Linguæ Latinæ*: or *Laurentius Valla* in his *Elegancies*: or *Johannes Buchlerus* in his *Elegancies*: or *Jacobus Omphalius* in his *Elocutionis Imitatio & Apparatus*: or *Hadrianus Cardinalis* in his *de modis Latinè loquendi*: or *Franciſcus Sylvius* in his *Progymnaſmata*: or *Edmundus Richerius* in his *Rhetorick*: *Godſchalcus Stewichius*; *Horatius Turſelinus*; *Adamus Durrerus*; and *Philippus Pareus*, have all written juſt Tracts particularly of theſe. A competency therefore of knowledge of the Elegancies of the Particles, and of skill to uſe them elegantly, cannot but be yielded by reaſon; and by experience will be found

to

to be hugely conducing to the rendring of the Learners Latine elegant. With this knowledge and skill I adviſe the Teacher by all ways and means, upon all occaſions to furniſh his Scholar, what he may. And every Lecture, every Exerciſe will afford him matter for Obſervation. But the ready way, I conceive, is to furniſh him with, and at convenient times read to him ſome one or two Tracts of the Particles both of the *Engliſh* and *Latine* Tongue. For *Engliſh* though I may not commend, yet I may mention mine own *Treatiſe* on that Subject. And for *Latine* I recommend unto him *Horatius Tuſſelinus*; or rather, as being later and better, *Philippus Pareus de Particulis Latinæ Orationis*: which I wiſh were as common as it is good. And if the reading of theſe whole Authors, ſeem too laborious, & be like to take up too muchtime (though no time almoſt can be too much to be ſpent in ſo elegant a ſtudy) the Teacher may out of them, and his own Obſervation, make a ſhort Collection, and give to his Scholar for his Uſe. And till he ſhall have made a letter of his own, he may uſe this following.

Some Particles are elegantly uſed *for* others, and ſome are elegantly uſed *with* others. I ſhall ſpeak firſt of thoſe that are elegantly uſed for others. And of theſe ſome are elegant where other expreſſions are not elegant: and ſome are elegantly uſed for others, which alſo may in the ſame ſenſe be uſed almoſt, if not all out, as elegantly as they. I begin with the former?

Of Particles elegantly uſed where other Expreſſions are not Elegant.

Rather ſay, *ad verbum*, than *de verbo ad verbum*:

as, *Tabellas Latinas ad verbum de Græcis expreſſas.* Cic.

Rather repeat *alius* in diverſe Caſes, then ſay, *Unus, uno,* or *aliqui uno, alii alio modo:* as, *Alius alio dicendi genere gaudet. Alii alius vivendi mos eſt.* So repeat *aliud,* or *aliter,* rather then ſay *aliud,* or *aliter quàm*; as, *Aliud dicis, aliud cogitas. Aliter dicit, aliter facit*

Rather ſay *alius ex alio,* than *unus poſt alium*; as, *Aliud ex alio me quotidiè impedit.* Cic.

Rather ſay *quis quid,* than *quis aliquid*: as, *Si quis quid reddit, magna habenda eſt gratia.* Ter. So rather ſay *quo quis,* than *quo aliquis:* as, *Quo enim quis verſutior & callidior eſt, hoc inviſior & ſuſpectior detractâ opinione probitatis.* Cic. So rather ſay *cum quis,* than *cum aliquis:* as, *Cum quis invitus laborem ſuſcipit, tum ſentit graviorem.* So immediately after *nè, num, niſi, ſeu, ſive,* uſe *quis,* rather than *aliquis:* as, *Ne quam patiar injuriam, opera mihi danda eſt. Num quas mihi affers literas? Niſi quæ me fortè fugiunt.* Cic. *Niſi quid aliud vobis placet,* Cic, *Si verum eſt* Fabium Labeonem, *ſeu quem alium id tenuiſſe.* Cic.

And laſtly after *ſine* rather uſe *ullus, quiſpiam,* or *quiſquam,* then *aliquis:* as, *Sine cujuſpiam operâ; ſine cujuſquam auxilio; ſine ulla pecunia.*

Rather ſay *unus & alter* than *unus & duo:* as, *Venit unus & item alter.* Ter. *Quid eſt tantum in uno, aut altero die?* Cic.

Rather ſay *etiam num,* or *etiam nunc,* than *uſque nunc:* as, *Quæritur etiam num quis eum nuncium miſerit,* Cic. *Etiam nunc hic ſtas,* Parmenio? Ter. So rather ſay *etiam tum* than *uſque tunc*; as, *Cum etiam tum in lecto* Craſsus *eſſet,* Cic.

Rather ſay *hinc & illinc* than *hinc & inde:* as, *Hinc & illinc exhibent mihi negotium,* Plaut.

Rather

Rather uſe *in dies*, or *in horas* after a Comparative degree, than *magis, ac magis*, or, *Fit doctior in dies.*

Rather ſay *maximè omnium*, than *plus quàm omnes*: as, *Qui maximè omnium nobilium Græcis literis ſtuduit.* Cic. So rather ſay *minimè omnium*, than *minus quàm omnes*: as, *Quod quidem tu minimè omnium ignoras.* Cic.

Rather ſay *minimum*, than *ut minimum*, or *ad minus*: as, *Ita fiunt omnes partes minimùm octoginta una.* Cic.

Rather ſay *non ita pridem*, than *non multo tempore antè*: as, *Noſtrâ autem civitate non ita pridem dominatu regio liberatâ.* Cic.

Rather ſay *non idem tibi & mihi*, than *non idem tibi ſicut mihi*: as, *Non eadem vobis, & illis neceſſitudo impendet.* Sal.

To expreſs a little time rather ſay *parumper*, or *pauliſper*, than *parum*, or *paulum*: as *Dum exiero, parumper opperire hìc.* Ter. *Pauliſper, dum ſe uxor, ut fit, comparat, moratus eſt.* Cic.

Rather ſay *per hos dies*, than *durantibus his diebus*: as, *Nulla abs te per hos dies epiſtola inanis aliquâ re utili & ſuavi venerat.* Cic. *Quam provinciam tenuiſtis à prædonibus liberam per hoſce annos?* Cic.

Rather ſay *pridie quàm*, than *pridie quo*: as, *Pridie quàm exceſſit è vitâ.* Cic. So uſe *quàm*, not *quo*, after *Poſtridie*; as, *Poſtridie intellexi, quàm à vobis diſceſſi.* Cic.

Rather ſay *præ ut*, than *in comparatione*: as, *Parum etiam, præ ut futurum eſt, prædicas*: Plaut.

Rather ſay *pro virili parte*, than *quantum unus vir poteſt*: as, *Hæc qui pro ſuâ virili parte defendunt.*

After a Verb of doubting rather ſay *quin*, than *quod non*, as, *Quod ſi acciderit, non dubitat, quin brevi* Troja *ſit peritura.* Cic.

Rather ſay *quoties*, than *quot vicibus*: as, *Quoties tibi extorta eſt ſica iſta de manibus?*

Rather ſay *ut quiſque*, than *ſecundum quod quiſque*: as, *Ut quiſque eſt vir optimus, ita difficillimè alios eſſe improbos ſuſpicatur.* Cic.

Rather ſay *Semel & iterum*, than *ſemel & bis*: as *Ut re ſemel atque iterum præjudicatâ condemnatus in judicium venerit.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *non temere eſt*, than *non ſine quâ re eſt*: as, *Non temere eſt, quod tu tam times.* Ter.

Rather uſe *ultra*, than *ulterius*: as, *Si probabiliter dicentur, nè quid ultra requiratis.* Cic.

Rather ſay *paucis diebus poſt*, or *paucis poſt diebus*, than, *poſt paucis diebus*: as, *Paucis poſt diebus quàm* Lucâ *diſceſſerat.* Cic,

Rather ſay *uſpiam*, than *in aliquo loco*: as, *Inde utrum conſiſtere uſpiam velit, an mare tranſire, neſcit.* Cic,

And thus much of Particles elegantly uſed where other Expreſſions are not elegant. I now proceed to the Second ſort.

Of Particles elegantly uſed where others alſo may be uſed elegantly.

A is elegantly uſed for *pro*: as, *Vide nè hoc totum, Scævola, ſit à me.* Cic. Alſo for *poſt*: as, *Quid antepones* Veneri *à jentaculo?* Plaut. Alſo for *contra*: as, *A quo periculo defendite, Judices, civem Fonteium.* Cic.

Ad is elegantly uſed for *uſque ad*: as, Sophocles *ad ſummam Senectutem tragœdias fecit.* Cic. *Inermes ad ſatietatem trucidabitis.* Liv. *Quod iis ad denarium ſolveretur.* Cic. Alſo for *circiter*, and *circa*: as, *Homines ad quindecim* Curioni *aſſenſerunt.* Cic. *Ad*

quæ

quæ tempora te expectem, facias me certiorem velim. Cic. Alſo for *apud:* as, *Signa quæ nobis curâſti, ea ſunt ad* Cajetam *expoſita.* Cic. Alſo for *ante* as, Clodius *abjectâ togũ ſe ad generi pedes abjecit.* Cic. Alſo for *ſecundum:* as, *ad arbitrium & nutum auditorum totum ſe fingit & accommodat.* Cic. Alſo for *præ* in Compariſon: as, *At nihil ad noſtram hanc.* Ter. Alſo for *poſt*: as *Neſcio quid interſit, utrum nunc veniam, an ad decem annos.* Cic. Alſo for *de:* as, *Poſtquam vos ad virtutem verba feciſtis* Symmach.

Adeò is elegantly put for *ità, tam* or *tantùm:* as, *Adeone hoſpes hujus urbis, adeo ignarus es, ut hæc neſcias?* Cic. So *Adeo non* is elegantly uſed for *tantum abeſt ut:* as, *Adeò ipſe non violavit ut ſummam curam adhibuerit, ne quis captivo corpori illuderet.* Curt.

Adhuc is elegantly uſed for *præterea:* as, *Niſi ſi quid adhuc fortè vultis.* Cic.

Admodum is elegantly uſed for *omnino:* as, Curio *literarum admodum nihil ſciebat.* Cic.

At is elegantly uſed for *ſaltem:* as, *Si mihi reipublicâ bonâ frui non licebit, at carebo malâ.* Cic.

Certè is elegantly uſed for *ſaltem:* as, *Homines mortem optare incipiant, vel certò timere deſinant.* Cic.

Citiùs is elegantly uſed for *priùs*; as, *Vox me citiùs defecerit, quàm nomina.* Cic.

Cùm is elegantly uſed for *etſi*: as, *Cùm plus etiam contenderimus, quàm poſſumus; minus tamen faciemus, quàm debemus.* Cic.

De is elegantly put for *in*, or *per* before words of Time: as, *In comitium de nocte venit.* Cic. Alſo for. *Super:* as, Regulus *de captivis commutandis* Romam *miſſus.* Cic. Alſo for *ob*, or *propter:* as, *Flebat uterque non de ſuo ſupplicio: ſed pater de filii morte, de patris filius.* Cic. Alſo for *quod attinet:* as, *De pace, ſentio ſimulationem eſſe apertam.* Cic. Alſo for *ſecundùm:*

cundùm: as, *De amicorum ſententiâ* Roſcius Romam *confugit.* Cic. Alſo for *pro*: as, *De imperio decertare.* Cic.

Deinceps is elegantly put for *deindè*: as, *De juſtitiâ dictum eſt, deinceps, ut erat propoſitum, de libertate dicendum.* Cic.

Eâ re is elegantly uſed for *propterea*: as *Is metuit, & eâ re fugit.* Cic.

Eò is elegantly uſed for *ad id*, or *uſque ad id*: as, *Eò redacta res erant, ut nulla amplius ſpes eſſet.* Cic. Alſo for *ideò*: as, *Illic homo aurum me ſcit habere, eò me ſalutat blandiùs.* Plaut.

Ergò is elegantly uſed for *causâ*: as, *Si quid contra alias leges ejus legis ergò factum ſit.* Cic.

Ex is elegantly uſed for *ſecundùm*: as, *Ex præceptis philoſophiæ vita acta.* Cic. *Ut ſpero, ſtatues ex dignitate noſtrâ.* Cic. Alſo for *pòſt*: as, *ex conſulatu profectus eſt in* Galliam. Cic.

Extrà is elegantly uſed for *præter*: as, *Extra ducem, paucoſque præterea.* Cic.

Hoc with *quo* is elegantly uſed for *tanto quanto*: as, *Hoc audio libentiùs, quo ſæpius.* Cic. *Quo difficilius, hoc præclarius.* Cic.

In is elegantly uſed for *inter*: as, *Hic in magnis viris non eſt habendus.* Cic.

Is with *qui* is elegantly uſed for *talis qualis*: as, *Itaque ego is in illum ſum, quem me eſſe vis.* Cic.

Id quod is elegantly put for *quæ res*: as, *Seeedant improbi, ſecernant ſe à bonis, unum in locum congregentur, muro denique id quod ſæpe jam dixi, ſecernantur à bonis.* Cic.

Ita is elegantly put for *hac conditione*: as, *Nam hoc ipſum ita juſtum eſt, ſi eſt voluntarium.* Cic.

Iterum is elegantly put for *ſecundo*: as, *Fabulæ vix dignæ quæ iterum legantur.* Cic. *Iterum ac tertio nominati.* Cic.

Juxta is elegantly put for *ſecundum*: as, *Juxta deos in tuâ manu eſt.* Tacit.

Licet

Licet is elegantly put for *etiamſi* : as, *Licet corpus abeſſet meum, dignitas jam in patriam redierat.* Cic.

Longe is elegantly uſed for *procul* : as, *Iſti nuntii quàm longè ſint, neſcio.* Cic. Alſo for *valde* : as, *Longè mihi alia mens.* Sal.

Minus is elegantly uſed for *non* : as, *At non nunquam quæ prædicta ſunt, minus eveniunt.* Cic.

Næ is elegantly uſed for *verè* : as, *Næ illi vehementer errant.* Cic.

Nec is elegantly uſed for *non* : *Quo mortuo nec ita multo poſt, in Galliam proficiſcitur.* Cic. *Nec enim illa prima vera eſt.* Cic.

Nihil is elegantly uſed for *non* : as, *Hoc tamen opus in apertum ut proferas; nihil poſtulo.* Cic.

Niſi is elegantly uſed for *veruntamen* : as, *De re nihil poſſum judicare, niſi illud mihi perſuadeo.* Cic.

Nullus is elegantly uſed for *non* : as, *Memini tametſi nullus moneas.* Ter.

Nuſquam is elegantly uſed for *nullo in loco* : as, *Ego verò nuſquam eſſe illos puto.* Cic.

Ob is elegantly uſed for *ante* : as, *Mihi ob oculos exilium verſatur.* Cic.

Omnino is elegantly uſed for *tantummodo* and *prorſus* : as, *Quinque omnino fuerunt, qui illum abſolverunt.* Cic. *Epulabar cum ſodalibus omnino modicè.* Cic.

Parum is elegantly uſed for *non ſatis* : as, *Duas dabo, una ſi parum eſt.* Plaut.

Per is elegantly uſed for *ob* : as, *Neque ſciebat, neque per ætatem etiam poterat.* Ter.

Perinde is elegantly uſed for *æquè*, or *ita* : as, *Philoſophia non perinde ac de hominum eſt vitâ merita, laudatur.* Cic. *Quæ perdifficilia ſunt, perinde habenda ſunt, ac ſi effici non poſſint.* Cic.

Præ is elegantly uſed for *ante* : as *Stillantem præ ſe pugionem tulit,* Cic. Alſo for *ob*, or *propter* : as *Solem*

lem, præ Sagittarum multitudine, non videbitis Cic.

Præter is elegantly uſed for *extra:* as *Amicum ſibi ex Conſularibus neminem eſſe video, præter* Lucullum, Cic. Alſo for *Supra:* as, *Attici in eo genere præter cæteros excellunt*, Cic.

Præterquam is uſed for *niſi*; as *Nullum a vobis præmium poſtulo, præterquàm hujus diei memoriam ſempiternam*, Cic.

Pro is uſed for *ante: as, Illa præſidia, quæ pro templis omnibus cernitis*, Cic. Alſo for *in:* as, *Laudati quoque pro concione omnes ſunt*, Liv. Alſo for *vice*, or *loco*; as *Tibi* Marcelli *ſtatua pro patibulo fuit*, Cic. Alſo for *ſecundum*: as *Civitatibus pro numero militum pecuniæ ſummas deſcribere*, Cic. Alſo for *ob* or *propter:* as, *pro hujus peccatis ego ſupplicium ſufferam*, Plaut.

Prope is uſed for *juxta:* as, *Cum plebs prope ripam* Anienis *conſedisſet*, Cic.

Propter is uſed for *prope*; as, *In pratulo propter* Platonis *ſtatuam conſedimus*, Cic. *Ipſe cum liberis & colonis propter Aquilam adſiſtit*, Sal.

Quæ repeated is elegantly uſed for *tum tum:* as *Topiarium laudavi, ita omnia conveſtivit hederâ, quà baſim villæ, quà intercolumnia ambulationis*, Cic..

Quando is elegantly uſed for *quoniam*: as, *Quam quando complexus es, et tenes*, Cic. So *Quandoquidem:* as *Quandoquidem tu iſtos oratores tantopere laudas*, Cic.

Quamvis is elegantly uſed for *quantumvis:* as *Quaſi vero mihi difficile ſit, quamvis multos nominatim proferre*, Cic.

Quaſi is elegantly uſed for *tanquam:* as, *ſic eas exponam, quaſi ageretur res, non quaſi narretur*, Cic. Alſo for *ſicut*; or *non ſecus ac:* as, *Quaſi tua res aut honos agatur, ita laboras.* Cic. Alſo for *fere*: as *Quantulus vobis videtur? mihi quaſi pedalis*, Cic.

Qui

Qui is elegantly uſed for *ut*: as *Nec tam ſum inſolens, qui me* Jovem *eſſe dicam.* Cic. Alſo for *qualis*: as, *Sed illum eum eſſe puto, qui eſſe debeat.* Cic.

Quid is elegantly uſed for *cur*: as, *Sed quid ego argumentor? quid plura diſputo?* Cic.

Quod is elegantly uſed for *quantum*: as, *Ipſe (quod commodo tuo fiat) cum eo colloquere.* Cic. Alſo for *quantum ad id quod*: as, *Quod ad me ſcribis de* Hermathena, *mihi gratiſſimum eſt.* Cic. Alſo for *quia*: as, *Qui enim beatior* Epicurus, *quod in patriâ vivebat; quàm* Metrodorus, *quod* Athenis? Cic.

Quo is elegantly uſed for *quanto*: as, *Sed quo erant ſuaviores, eo majorem dolorem ille caſus afferebat.* Cic. *Quo gratior tua liberalitas* C. Cæſar, *nobis qui illa videmus, debet eſſe.* Cic. Alſo for *ut*: as, *Quo facilius probaret illa Romani eſſe hominis, idcirco*--Cic.

Quomodo is elegantly uſed for *ut*, or *ſicut*: as, *Poſtulatio brevis, & quomodo mihi perſuâdeo, aliquanto æquior.* Cic.

Quocirca is elegantly uſed for *quamobrem*: as, *Quocirca benè apud majores noſtros Senatus decrevit.* Cic.

Quippe is elegantly uſed for *utpote*: as, *Sol* Democrito *magnus videtur, quippe homini erudito.* Cic. *Convivia cum fratre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum niſi perraro veniret.* Cic.

Secundum is elegantly uſed for *pro*: as, *Secundum nos judicari volumus.* Cic.

Si is elegantly uſed for *an*: as, *Dicito, ſi paſcuntur aves.* Cic. Alſo for *etiamſi*: as, *Et meherculè, ſi nihil diceret, tanto officio me moveret.* Cic.

Sin is elegantly put for *ſed ſi*: as, *Si ita eſt, omnia faciliora: ſin aliter, magnum negotium.* Cic.

Sub is elegantly uſed for *Statim poſt*: as, *Sub equeſtris finem certaminis, coorta eſt pugna equitum,* Liv.

Super

Super is elegantly uſed for *de* : as, *Simulque cogites, quid nobis agendum ſit ſuper legatione.* Cic.

Supra is elegantly uſed for *ante* : as, *Illa, quam ſupra dixi.* Cic.

Tantum is elegantly uſed for *ſolum* : as, *Nomen tantùm virtutis uſurpas : quid ipſa valeat, ignoras.* Cic. So *Tantummodo.*

Tum is elegantly uſed for *deinde* : as, *Tum rationes in eâ diſputatione à te collectæ vetabant me reipublicæ penitus diffidere.* Cic.

Ubi is elegantly uſed for *in quo*, &c. as, *Ut is cuiq; locus, ubi ipſe ſit, miſerrimus eſſe videatur.* Cic. Alſo for *Poſtquam* : as, *Ubi ſemel quis pejeraverit, ei credi poſtea, non oportet.* Cic.

Vel is elegantly uſed for *ſaltem* : as, *Poſtremò, ſi nullo alio pacto, vel fœnore.* Ter. Alſo for *etiam* : as, *Per me vel ſtertas licet, non modò quieſcas.* Cic. *Hoc in genere nervorum vel minimum, ſuavitatis autem vel plurimum.* Cic.

Velut is uſed for *exempli cauſâ* : as, *Beſtiæ, quæ è terrâ gignuntur, velut Crocodili.* Cic.

Ultra is elegantly uſed for *præterea* : as, *Si probabiliter dicentur, ne quid ultra requiratis.* Cic.

Unde is elegantly uſed for *ex quo*, &c. as, *Equidem vobis fontes unde hauriretis, atque itinera ipſa putavit eſſe demonſtranda.* Cic.

Unus is elegantly put for *ſolus* : as, *In tuis ſummis laudibus excipiunt unam iracundiam.* Cic.

Ut is elegantly put for *quomodo* : as, *Quid agit tua uxor? Ut valet?* Plaut. So *utcunque* for *quomodocunque.* Alſo for *Sicut*, as, *Erat cùm literis Latinis tum Græcis, ut temporibus illis, eruditus.* Cic. Alſo for *utpote qui* : as, *Ille, ut fuit ſemper apertiſſimus, non purgavit, ſed indicavit.* Cic. Alſo for *licet* : as, *Verùm, ut hoc non ſit, tamen ſervet rempublicam* Cic. Alſo for *poſtquam* : as, *Ut ab Urbe diſceſſi nullum*

illum prætermiſi diem, quin aliquid ad te literarum darem. Cic.

Ut ut is elegantly put for *utcunque*: as, *Ut ut hæc ſunt, tamen hoc faciam.* Ter.

And thus far of the Particles that are uſed elegantly for others. I now proceed to thoſe that remain.

Of Particles which are elegantly uſed together with others.

Ab hath *uſque* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Sed ab uſque Tmolo petivit.* Cic.

Abſque hath *te* or *eo eſſet* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Nam abſque te eſſet, rectè ego mihi vidiſſem.* Ter.

Ad hath *ſummam* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Ad ſummam animo forti ſitis.* Cic.

Æquè hath *ac*, *atque*, and *ut* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Quis eſſet tantus fructus in proſperis rebus, niſi haberes, qui illis æquè ac tu ipſe, gauderet?* Cic. *Sed me colit & obſervat, æque atque illum ipſum patronum ſuum.* Cic. *Itaque libentiſſimè prædicabo* Cn. Pompeium *ſtudio & authoritate, æquè ut unumquemque veſtrum pro ſalute meâ laborâſſe.* Cic.

Alius and *aliter* have *ac* and *atque* elegantly after them: as, *Irrepit in hominum mentes alia dicentis, ac ſignificantis diſſimulatio.* Cic. *Non alius eſſem atque nunc ſum.* Cic. *Ne ſim ſalvus ſi aliter ſcribo, ac ſentio.* Cic. *Aliter, atque oſtenderam, facio.* Cic.

Contra hath *ac*, *atque*, and *quàm* elegantly joyned to it: *Ut contra, ac dicat, accipi & ſentiri velit.* Cic. *Contra atque apud nos fieri ſolet.* Varro. *Contra, quàm nos ſuprà ſcripſimus.* Gell.

Eo hath elegantly *quo*, *quod*, and *quia* anſwering to it: as, *Non eo dico, quo mihi veniat in dubium tua fides.* Cic. *Eoque tardius ſcripſi ad te, quod quotidie*

teipſum

teipſum expectabam. Cic. *Id autem eo facilius credebatur, quia ſimile vero videbatur.* Cic.

Facilè is elegantly joyned with *primus* or *princeps:* as, *Non ſolùm ſui municipii, ſed illius vicinitatis facilè primus.* Cic. Eudemus, Platonis *auditor, in Aſtrologia, judicio doctiſſimorũ hominum, facilè princeps.* Cic.

Jam hath elegantly joyned with it *inde a,* and *uſque* : as, *Jam inde à Conſulatu meo.* Cic. *Jam inde ab* Ariſtotele. Cic. *Vetus opinio eſt jam uſque ab Heroicis ducta temporibus.* Cic.

Interea hath elegantly *dum* and *quoad* joyned with it : as, *Interea dum hæc, quæ diſperſa ſunt, coguntur.* Cic. *Interea quoad fides eſſet data,* Cæſarem *facturum, quæ polliceretur.* Cæſ.

Is hath *ut* elegantly joyned with it : as, *Nec tamen is ſum, ut mea me maxime delectent.* Cic.

Id hath *ætatis,* or *temporis* elegantly joyned with it : as, *Duo filii id ætatis.* Cic. *Id ætatis jam ſumus, ut omnia fortiter ferre debeamus.* Cic. *Maximè quod is locus ab omni turbâ id temporis vacuus eſſet.* Cic. *Venit enim ad me, & quidem id temporis, ut retinendus eſſet.* Cic.

Ita is elegantly joyned with *non,* or *nec* : as, *Simulachra præclara, ſed non ita antiqua.* Cic. *Nec ita multum provectus, rejectus Auſtro ſum in eum ipſum locum unde conſcenderam.* Cic.

Juxta hath *ac ſi* elegantly joyned with it : as, *Tum reliquis officiis, juxta ac ſi meus frater eſſet, ſuſtentavit.* Cic.

Licet hath *per* with his Accuſative caſe elegantly joyned to it : as, *Per me vel ſtertas licet, non modò quieſcas.* Cic. *Sinatis hunc facere, dum per ætatem licet.* Ter.

Longè is elegantly joyned with words of Difference, Diſſimilitude, or Excellence : as, *Longè aliter, atque à me dicta erant, detulerunt.* C. *Quod eſt*

longe

longè secus. Cic. *Vir longè post homines natos improbissimus.* Cic. Pætus *longè princeps municipii* Lucensis. Cic.

Magis hath *quàm*, and *si*, elegantly joyned with it: as, *Jus bonumque apud eos non legibus magis, quàm naturâ valebat.* Sal. *Magis dicas, si scias, quod ego scio.* Plaut. It is also elegantly joyned unto Substantives, as well as to uncompared Adjectives: as, *Nisi forte magis erit parricida, qui consularem patrem, quàm si quis humilem necaverit.* Cic.

Maximè hath elegantly joyned with it *quàm*; *vel*; *quàm qui*; *ut quisque*: as, *Dicere quàm maximè ad veritatem accommoda.* Cic. *Quæ quidem vel maximè suspicionem movent.* Cic. *Tam sum amicus reipublicæ, quàm qui maximè.* Cic. *Ut quisque maximè opis indigeat, ita ei potissimùm opitulari.* Cic.

Minus hath *si* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Si minùs necari, at custodiri oportebat.* Cic.

Mox hath *quàm* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Quàm mox navigo?* Plaut. *Expecto quàm mox* Chærea *hâc ratione utatur.* Cic.

Ne hath *quidem*, and *nunc* elegantly going with it: as, *Nunquam illum, ne minimâ quidem re, offendi.* Cic. *Ne nunc senum convivio delector.* Cic.

Nec and *neque* are elegantly joyned with *dum*: as, Cassius *ineptas literas misit, nec dum* Sibuli *erant allatæ.* Cic. *Neque dum* Romæ *es profectus.* Cic.

Nemo is elegantly joyned with *homo*, and *quisquam*: as, *Neminem hominem pluris facio.* Cic. *Nemo quisquam illorum ad te venit.* Ter.

Nihil hath *ne quidem* divided by another word elegantly after it: as, *Ad eas ego literas nihil scripsi, ne gratulandi quidem causâ.* Cic.

Nimio hath *plus* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Sed quia nimio plus te diligo.* Cic.

Nisi hath *si*, *quis*, and *siquis* elegantly joyned

with it: as, *Nisi si id est, quod suspicor, aliquid monstri alunt.* Ter. *Nisi quis deus nos respexerit.* Cic. *Nisi verò si quis est, qui* Catilinæ *similes cum* Catilinâ *sentire non putet.* Cic.

Non hath elegantly joyned with it *quin*; *quo*; and *modò non*: as, *Non quin rectum esset, sed quia multò rectius fuit.* Cic. *Non quo eâ sit mihi quicquam carius, aut esse debeat.* Cic. *Tu id non modò non prohibebas, verùm etiam approbabas.* Cic.

Nullus hath *quin* elegantly after it: as, *Dies fere nullus est, quin domum meam ventitet.* Cic.

Nunquam hath *ullus* and *quin* coming elegantly after it: as, *Nunquam ex tuis ullæ mihi literæ redditæ sunt. Nunquam unum intermittit diem quin semper veniat.* Ter.

Par hath *ac* and *atque* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Nec mihi par cum* Lucio *ratio est, ac tecum fuit.* Cic. *Si par in nobis hujus artis, atque in illo Pictore scientia fuisset.* Cic,

Perinde hath elegantly after it *ac*; *ut*; *acsi*; *quasi*; as, *Non perinde, ac est merita, laudatur,* Cic. *Perinde erit, ut acceperis.* Cic. *Perinde, ac si virtute vicissent.* Cic. *Perinde quasi certi quicquam sit in rebus humanis.* Cic.

Præ hath *ut*, *quòd* and *quàm* elegantly with it, when comparison is noted: as, *Parùm etiam, præ ut futurum est, prædicas.* Plaut. *Omnes res relictæ habeo, præ quod tu velis.* Plaut. *Præ quàm quod molestum est.* Plaut.

Pro hath elegantly joyned with it, *ut*; *eo ac*; *eo ut*; *eo quòd*; *eo quantum*; as, *Prout hominis facultates ferebant,* Cic. *Spero deos, pro eo ac mereor, relaturos esse gratiam,* Cic. *Pro eo ut temporis difficultas, aërumnæ, penuria tulit.* Cic. *Vereor nè parùm tibi, pro eo quod à te habeo, reddiderim.* Cic. *Pro eo, quantum in quibusque sit ponderis, æstimanda sunt,* Cic.

Pro

Prope hath *à* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Prope à meis ædibus ſedebas.* Cic. Alſo *ut*: as, *Prope fuit, ut Dictator crearetur.* Liv.

Quàm hath *ut*, and *quomodo* elegantly after it: as, *Hæc ſunt dicta ſubtiliùs, quàm ut quivis ea poſſit agnoſcere.* Cic. *Multa præclara in eo viro cognovi: ſed nihil eſt admirabilius, quàm quomodo ille mortem* Marci *filii tulit.* Cic. It is alſo ſet with great elegancy before a Superlative degree: as, *Sed peto a te, ut quàm celerrimè mihi librarius mittatur.* Cic. *Expoſui quàm breviſſimè potui, oracula.* Cic.

Quiſquam hath *omnium*, and *unus* elegantly joyned with it: as, *An hoc dubitavit quiſquam omnium, quin is venalem in* Sicilià *juriſdictionem habuerit.* Cic. *Ne quiſquam unus malis artibus poſtea tam popularis eſſet.* Liv.

Quo is elegantly joyned with *minùs*: as, *Nihil impedit, quo minùs id, quod maximè placeat, facere poſſimus.* Cic. *Quo minùs familiaris ſum, hoc ſum ad inveſtigandum curioſior.* Cic. Alſo with *non*: as, *Non quo de tuâ conſtantiâ dubitem, ſed quia mos eſt ita rogandi, rogo.* Cic.

Quin is elegantly uſed after Negative Particles, *Nemo, nullus, nihil, non*: as, *Nemo* Lylibæi *fuit, quin viderit*; *in* Siciliâ, *quin audierit.* Cic. *Dies fere nullus eſt, quin hic Satyrus domum meam ventitet.* Cic. *Cauſæ nihil dico, quin ita ſit.* Cic. *Non quin diſſentiam, ſed quod--* Cic.

Quiſque is elegantly uſed after *ſe, ſuus, qui*; an Adjective Numeral; or a Superlative degree: alſo betwixt two Superlatives: as, *Se quiſque diligit. Suæquemque fortunæ maximè pœniteat.* Cic. *In quo quiſque artificio excellit, is in ſuo genere* Roſcius *dicitur.* Cic. *Quinto quoque anno* Sicilia *cenſetur.* Cic. *Certè enim recentiſſima quæque ſunt correcta & emendata maximè.* Cic. *Optimum quodque rariſſimum eſt.* Cic.

Quotus hath *quisque* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Quotus enim quisque Philosophorum invenitur, qui sit ita moratus?* Cic.

Secus hath *ac*, *atque*, and *quàm* elegantly after it: as, *Non secus acsi meus esset frater.* Cic. *Sed si aliquando secus, atque in tradendâ arte dici solet.* Cic. *Mihi autem erit maximæ curæ, nequid fiat secus quàm volumus.* Cic.

Sin hath *minùs* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Si perficiunt, optimè: sin minus, ad nostrum Jovem revertamur.* Cic.

Similiter hath *ac*, *atque*, and *utsi* elegantly after it: as. *Similiter facis, ac si me roges, cur te duobus contuear oculis.* Cic. *Neque verò illum similiter, atq; ipse eram, commotum esse vidi.* Cic. *Similiter facere eos, qui inter se contenderent, ut si naulæ inter se certarent.* Cic. The Adjective *Similis* hath the same Particles elegantly after it.

Simul hath elegantly after it *ac*, *atque*, and *ut*: as, *Simul ac mihi collibitum est.* Cic. *Quod is simul atque sensit.*-- Cic. *Simul ut videro* Curionem Cic.

Supra hath *quàm* and *nihil* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Corpus patiens inediæ suprà quàm cuique credibile est.* Sal. *Ità accuratè ut nihil suprà.* Cic.

Talis hath elegantly after it *ac*, or *atque*, *ut*, and *qui*: as, *Honos talis paucis est datus, ac mihi.* Cic. *Tali atque hic est infortunio.* Ter. *Vitæ quidem talis fuit ut nihil posset accedere.* Cic. *Talem igitur te esse oportet, qui primum te ab impiorum civium societate sejungas.* Cic.

Tam hath elegantly after it, *quàm*, *ut*, *qui*, and *quàm qui*, as, *Tam te diligit quàm si vixerit tecum.* Cic. *Non essem tam inurbanus, ut eo gravarer, quod vos cupere sentirem.* Cic. *Quis est tam Lynceus, qui in tantis tenebris nihil offendat?* Cic. *Tam levis, quam qui levissimus.* Cic. *Tam mihi gratum id erit, quàm quod gratissimum.* Cic.

Tan-

Tantisper hath *dum* elegantly after it: as, *Ego hic tantisper dum exit, te opperiar foris.* Ter.

Tantum hath *non* elegantly after it: as, *Tantum non statim à funere ad negotiorum consuetudinem redit.* Sueton.

Tum hath *demum*, and *denique* elegantly after it: as, *Tum demum sciam rectè monuisse, si tu rectè caveris.* Plaut. *Tum denique fore beatas respub. putavit, si aut docti, aut sapientes homines eas regere cœpissent.* Cic.

Ubi hath *primùm* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Ubi primùm est licitum, illico properavi abire de foro.* Plaut.

Vel hath *maximè* joyned elegantly to it: as, *Hoc uno præstamus vel maximè feris.*-- Cic.

Vix hath *dum* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Vix dum epistolam tuam legeram, cùm ad me* Posthumius Curius *venit.* Cic.

Ultrà hath *quàm* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Exordium, ultrà quàm satis est, producitur.* Cic. *Servum gravissimè de se opinantem, non ultrà quàm compedibus coercuit.* Sueton.

Ut hath *statim* elegantly coming with it: as, Philippus, *ut heri me salutavit, statim* Romam *profectus est.* Cic. So *Primùm* and *confestim.*

And thus much of the Particles which are elegantly used together with others.

Now, as these are not all the Particles, whereof there be Elegant uses; so neither are these all the Elegant uses, that are made of these Particles: there being, as, many more besides these, so, very much more observable (and nothing less elegant than what is here said) of these. All I intended herein, was to give the Learner such a Tast of these Delicacies, as might whet his Phansie to a more eager desire after a fuller knowledge of them.

Notwithſtanding, even theſe few well digeſted, will have ſuch influence upon all his Exerciſes, as that no one of them will be without ſome ſavoury reliſh of pure *Roman* Eloquence. Only I muſt caution the Teacher, that he patiently bear with, and gently correct his Scholars miſtakes in theſe things; which, until he be well verſed in them, he will, for want of judgement and experience, be apt to fall into. And this is all I ſhall ſay for the preſent of the Elegancies of the Particles.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Idiomes of Engliſh and Latine.

EVery Language hath its *Idiotiſmes* and Proprieties, Phraſes and Forms of ſpeaking, peculiar to it ſelf, which cannot be rendred word for word into any other Language but with much barbarity and baldneſs of expreſſion. Thus however it is in Engliſh and Latine: inſomuch that either way to be *nimium fidus interpres*, To ſtick too cloſe to the Verbal Tranſlation will betray a man into ridiculous abſurdities. Therefore to take the Learner off again from his nice inſiſting on Verbal Tranſlating, and remedie thoſe inconveniencies that come by his ſticking too cloſe thereto, it will be neceſſary to acquaint him with the *Idiotiſmes* of both the Engliſh and Latine, and ſhew him how to expreſs himſelf in either Language according to the reſpective Proprieties thereof.

The one Precept in order to this, is, To heed the *Senſe*, more than the *Words*, and to fit the expreſſion thereunto. That being well rendred whether into Engliſh or Latine, whoſe ſenſe is clearly

and

and fully expreſſed in the Language whereby it is rendred, though the words be more or fewer than were in that, whence the Tranſlation was made. Obſervation indeed hath the main ſtroke in this buſineſs. Yet ſundry Helps may be adminiſtred. And for the eaſe of the Maſter and profit of the Scholar, I ſhall ſet down ſuch as I either conceive, or have found beneficial in this caſe.

One may be for the Teacher to obſerve unto him all the elegant *Idiotiſmes*, that accidentally occurre in his Lectures and Exercises; and cauſe him to ſet them down in a Book, and often to review them, and repeat them.

Another may be, to put him to learn ſuch Latine Authors, as are ſo tranſlated into Engliſh, as that the propriety of both Languages is heeded unto and obſerved by the Tranſlator, allowing him the uſe of the Tranſlation. Such are *Tully*'s *Offices* tranſlated by Mr. *Brinſlie*; *Terence*'s *Comedies* by Mr. *Bernard*; *Corderius*'s *Colloquies* by Mr. *Hoole*, &c. And *Janua Linguarum* by Mr. *Robotham*.

A third may be to give him a Catalogue of Engliſh *Idiotiſmes* barbarouſly tranſlated, and together with them, by way of correction, the elegant tranſlation of them; and labour to make him underſtand the ridiculous barbarity of the one, and propriety and elegancy of the other, after this manner.

Send me word { Bar. *Mitte mihi verbum.*
Eleg. *Fac me per literas certiorem.*

I am ſhort of mony { Bar. *Brevis ſum pecunie.*
Eleg. *Deficit me pecunia.*

Of this nature *Corderius* compoſed a whole Book, ſtyled, *De corrupti ſermonis emendatione*, which may be uſefully peruſed by any Learner, or young Teacher of the Latine Tongue.

A fourth may be for the Teacher, first, to read over himself every English, that his Scholar is to make into Latine, and to observe what *Idiotismes* occurr in that, and advertise the Learner of them, and shew him how to vary the English Phrase into such other expression, as is capable of an Elegant Verbal Translation.

But the fifth, (and that which I ever found most beneficial) is to give the Learner to Translate some *Englishes composed all, or most of Idiomatical expressions*, such as cannot, without most ridiculous barbarity, be translated word for word into Latine: and to shew him, and make him understand the ridiculous barbarousness of his own verbal Translations, and to furnish him instead thereof with the proper and elegant expressions. When he hath gone over in translating any one such English, which would be of some pretty length, then cause him to be very exact in giving readily without book, phrase by phrase, the corrected Latine for the English, and the English for the Latine. Also make him construe the Latine *verbatim*, so far as it may with good sense be done (it were not amiss to make him translate it word for word, as far as may be) for this will help him still more to the understanding of the English Phrase, and teach him how to resolve such English Phrases, into other words and expressions of like import, and much facilitate the whole work. After that, cause him to translate it over again, getting new Phrases for every expression; and if there be no new supply (which it is rare but there will be) let him vary what he hath, so as that it may seem new. And let him do again all the same with this second Translation, which he did with the former. And last of all, cause him (looking upon and

reading

reading his Engliſh, unleſs, (which is better) he can ſay it without book) to give for every Engliſh expreſſion both ſeveral Latine Tranſlations. Then proceed to another; and ſtill to another of the ſame nature, ſo long as there ſhall be need or reaſon.

This Exerciſe, as it is of all others the moſt difficult, ſo alſo the moſt profitable. It is not imaginable what a ſtrange alteration to the better it will in ſhort time produce in all the Scholars performances. And therefore I do moſt ſeriouſly above all others recommend it from my own experience unto the practice of others.

For the help of the Scholar in this work, there are of late ſundry Books come forth, *viz.* Mr. *Clark's Phraſeologia Puerilis*, Mr. *Willis's Angliciſmes Latinized*; and laſt of all, my own *Idiomatologia Anglo-Latina*, or *Engliſh-Latine Phraſeology*, in which, if the Learner ſhould be put to get every day one Head of Phraſes ſo perfectly at leaſt, as that looking only on the Engliſh, he can give the Latine for it; and looking only on the Latine, can for it give the Engliſh, I ſay not how much his profiting would be in a ſhort time, but leave it to Trial.

And for the eaſe of the Maſter, there are extant in Mr. *Clark's Dux Grammaticus* (pag. 246. &c.) ſeveral *Engliſh Dialogues*, of ſuch compoſition as I ſpake, ready for Tranſlation; which, by that time the Scholar hath well gone through with, according to the way that I ſpeak of, he will (by Gods bleſſing on his pains and induſtry) have attained ſuch a dexterity in Tranſlating, that he will now be fit to be put to any performance, where his *Invention* ſhall be exerciſed henceforward for *Matter*, as his *Memory* all this while hath

hath been for *Words*, being able to cloth his thoughts in proper Language, and ſo fit for the *Higher School*, where I ſhall leave him to the Maſter's ſkill, and care.

But becauſe that Book may not be to be had at every hand to be conſulted with, therefore that the Reader may not go without an exemplification of the thing I propound; and withal, that I may contribute ſtill ſomewhat more toward the eaſe of the Teacher, and uſe of the Learner, I have here added ſome new Dialogues of mine own contriving for that purpoſe: The Tranſlation whereof, if performed according to the Idiome of the Latine, will be no unelegant Compoſition (as the Latines of them lying by me, if occaſion were, would ſhew, which I forbear to publiſh, becauſe the deſign of theſe is only to be Engliſhes, for others to tranſlate into Latine:) But if the Idiome of the Latine be not obſerved in the rendring, then the Tranſlation will be bald and unelegant, and indeed not Latine, but a kind of barbarous and ridiculous Gibberiſh, like that which Petties and Puiſnees are uſed to ſpeak.

Certain

Certain Idiomatical Dialogues, contrived on purpoſe by the Tranſlation of them to bring off Children from the baldneſs of a Verbal Tranſlating.

DIALOGUE I.

Francis and *John.*

F. WHat ſayes the World of me?

J. 'Tis the common ſpeech of the world, that you are too much given to the world.

F. This is the faſhion of the world, to ſay any thing of any man.

J. I believe you cannot tell which way in the world to help it.

F. Could I do it, it would be as acceptable to me as any thing in the world.

J. It is to no end in the world to go about it.

F. I had as lieve as any thing in the world, I could tell who were the Author of that ſlander. Let him go to the worlds end, I will reſolve to follow him.

J. Ah by no means in the world, you ſhall not do ſo: that would be a piece of the greateſt folly in the world.

F. I ſhould be the maddeſt man in the world, if I ſhould let ſuch a one as him ſcape ſcot-free.

J. There is nothing in the world more fooliſh than an angry man, who minds nothing in the world, but how to revenge himſelf of thoſe, that have done him wrong.

F. It makes me ſo mad to have ſuch a thing talked of me, that I neither know whereabouts in the

the world I am, nor what in the world to doe, nor which way in the world to turn me.

J. It is one of the ſtrangeſt things in the world, that you ſhould be ſo angry for a thing of nothing.

F. I had as good be out of the world, as live to be ſo ſlandered in it.

J. You talk juſt for all the world, as if there were no where in the world any to be found, who were as ill talked of as you.

F. Goe any whither in the world, and all the world over, you will find none who deſerves leſs than I doe, to be ſo ill talked of.

J. As the world rules, you ſhall find few, but ſuffer as ill as you doe. And this is no new complaint but now come up. In elder times *Socrates* and a world more, who are many years ſince gone to the other world, who yet will be well ſpoken of to the worlds end, were in every whit as bad a caſe as you. And he were the maddeſt man in the world, that ſhould think not to fare as others doe.

F. It is a world of wrongs that I have ſuffered in this reſpect: but there ſeems to be ſomewhat of reaſon in what you ſay; and therefore let the world goe which way it will, I will reſolve to take all well.

J. 'Tis Chriſtian-like done of you: and when the world, and all things in the world ſhall come to nothing, then ſhall the benefit of this ſo great contentedneſs of yours be in being.

DIA-

DIALOGUE II.

Charles. Anthony.

C. HOW do horſes ſell here, *Antony*?

A. They are things that a while ago would have given mony, but now a days they they hardly give any thing.

C. But Bullocks ſurely bear a price.

A. Truly within this few years they would have given ſomething, but now they too are much fallen of price: horſes will give more than they yet. You may buy a good pair of bullocks for eight pound.

C. And are farmes down of price too?

A: How ſhould they be otherwiſe, when corn gives ſo little: I have a piece of land to ſell; I am confident there is no better in all this Country, and that will give more, and yet I may goe ſeek my Chapman.

C. How do you value it? ſet a price on it: I'le be your Chapman, if we can agree of price.

A. Take it for an hundred pound.

C. You are over dear of it; it is not worth ſo much. Give me your hand, here's fifty for you.

A, It is worth as much more, if a man might have to the worth of it.

C. Chuſe it, I will not give a penny more for it.

A. And I will not tak a penny leſs for it.

C. Then I do not believe we ſhall agree.

A. I cannot help that, unleſs I mean to undoe my ſelf, as God forbid I ſhould. I ſtand not in ſo great need yet, I thank God. No doubt but within a while land will riſe of price again.

C. Will

C. Will you take my mony before I goe? I will pay you down ready mony.

A. I have told you my price. I cannot abate a penny of it. if you like it ſo, I will be my words-maſter.

C. If that be your mind, I ſhall give over, and not give you one word more,

A. As you have a mind. I have told you my mind.

C. Then farewell, *Anthony*.

A. Farewell, to you *Charles*.

DIALOGUE. III.

Edward. *Andrew.*

E. *ANdrew*, It gave me in my mind, there would be ſomewhat to doe betwixt *George* and *Thomas*, before they had done and parted.

A. What's the matter, *Ned*?

E. It ſo fell out, that they fell out ſo, that it came at laſt to handy ſtroakes.

A. That's a bad matter; but who, I pray thee, got the better of it?

E. Though *Thomas* were the better cuffer, and for a while had the better of it, yet at laſt they parted even hands. For if *Thomas* gave *George* a daſh on the teeth, and made him give back, *George* had a good heart, and well knowing what a ſtout man he had to doe withal, behaved himſelf like a man, and would not give out, but gave him like for like.

A. What was the matter, that they fell together by the ears?

E. *George* making his boaſt, that he was deſcended from

from a Knight, gave out, that he was come of as a good a houſe as *Thomas* was. Whereupon *Thomas* took *George* a box, on the eare: and withal gave him warning to give over his comparing himſelf with him, who was of noble blood; and ſaid moreover he would give him as much more, if he took not heed.

A. What anſwer did *George* give him to this?

E. He onlie gave him a challenge into the field, and then gave him never a word more.

A. In my mind they are both to blame.

E. And I am of your mind too: for they ſhould not have given way to their Anger, but have given ſatisfaction to one another as reaſon was; in as much as Chriſt in the Laws that he hath given the Church, hath given us in charge not to doe, but as we would be done unto: but they that wholly give themſelves to pleaſure, as moſt young men do little mind the Laws of Chriſt, or give their minds to the keeping of them.

A. I hope, they were made friends again.

E. Yes, that they were, and they are now as great friends as ever

A. I pray you, who made them friends?

E. One that is a very great friend to them both, as they give out, came upon them, as they were fighting, and parted the fray betwixt them, and prevailed ſo far with them, that he made them friends. And from henceforth I hope they will be always friends.

A. In truth it was kindly done of him, and like a friend, to ſet them at one again.

E. Indeed it was done of him like a Chriſtian: and no doubt but in time he ſhall get that bleſſing, which Chriſt in his Goſpel hath promiſed to give unto the Peace-makers for it.

A. I give God thanks for it, that the matter ended so: for I was a little fearfull what the end of it would be.

DIALOGUE IV.

Matthew. *Adrian.*

M. *Adrian*, how came that into *William's* head to marry a wife, that is so old, she is past child-bearing?

A. In truth, *Matthew*, that cannot I tell now: but this I'le pass you my word for, that all is past and done between them, and that without many words passing on either side. And to say truth; so pretty a woman she was, and so young to see to, that she might have passed for a child-bearing woman.

M. I believe then, as matters pass, he hardly hath a wife to his mind.

A. There is no day almost passeth him, but he wishes him unmarried again, a hundred times over. But now 'tis past cure; he is undone: and though in times past he did ever pass his time in pleasure, yet must he now pass the rest of his life in trouble.

M. I am sorry the matter is brought to that pass. Though there were that said it would so come to pass, that he would repent him of his marrying, before three days were passed and come to an end.

A. For the most part it so comes to pass; as indeed it needs must come to pass, when men that are scarce past children, rashly run on their own heads, and pass not for the advice of their friends, who far pass them in wisdom and experience, by which

which they might more happily bring their purpoſes to paſs.

M. I believe it is come to paſs as ſome men wiſhed, whom I think good to paſs over without mentioning. For my ſelf, I am paſt marrying, and ſo paſs not for my ſelf. Only I wiſh that ſome would take warning by others harms.

A. Let us let theſe things paſs, as things of no concernment unto us, and paſs away the time in other talk.

M. At preſent I am a little buſie, ſo that I cannot tarry any longer with thee: to morrow, and you pleaſe, we will meet again, and talk our bellyfulls

A. Agreed. And in the mean time fare you well.

V. DIALOGUE.

Mark and *Paul.*

M. I Wonder, *Paul*, what ſhould be the reaſon, that there was ſuch a quarter kept at *Geneva.*

P. Cæſar hearing, that the enemy had broke out from all quarters, though ſooner than ordinary, drew his Souldiers out of their winter quarters into the field.

M. There was ſome reaſon for it. But where did they quarter?

P. About that time they had taken up their quarters about *Marſeil.*

M. What became of that ſtirre?

P. Cæſar beating up their quarters all on a ſuddain, put them into ſuch diſorder, that they preſently

ſently forſook their Arms, and took their heels, and ran away. Nevertheleſs a quarter of the Enemies Army was ſlain.

M. What became of the reſt?

P. Some eſcaped by flight; others were taken alive and had quarter given them.

M. He plaid his part finely. But I had heard, there was no quarter given.

P. Nay, they that aſked for quarter, had it: they only being killed that would not take quarter.

M. 'Twas Princelike done: for as the Poet long ſince ſaid, It is the part of a Prince to ſpare them that ſubmit, but to bring down thoſe that ſtand it out.

DIALOGUE VI.

Richard and *Peter.*

R. LEt us conſider, *Peter*, how far it may be fit for us to make our ſelves to do in this affair.

P. In truth I do not think it fit, that we our ſelves ſhould be at the doing of it.

R. What elſe then do you think fit to be done then?

P. I think we muſt think of, and at a fit time ſend over thither a man fit for that employment.

R. Money is fit: and I deſire by all means that what is fit ſhould be done: but I cannot think of a man fit to ſend: and this buſineſs is not fit to be put to every one, but one that is fit for the turn, and will do no more but what is fit.

P. You do as it is fit you ſhould. But what think you of *Giles*, a man fit for any thing, and that can fit his ſpeech to any turn; and who hath now got ſhooes

ſhooes ſo fit for his feet, that though a while ago he had a fit of the Gout, yet now it is compleatly fitted for going; may not he fit our turn?

R. He will do well for a fit: but ſometimes he falls into a fit of talking, and then talks more than is fit, and ſo marrs all.

P. If his wit do but come and go by fits it were more fit that lame *Giles* were let alone, and not ſent at this fit.

R. 'Tis as I tell you.

DIALOGUE VII.

Thomas and *George*.

T. *George*, Have you heard the news of *Robert*?

G. What? that he is over head and ears in love?

T. I mar'l who put it into his head to love that wench. This miſchief will fall on his pate, be he who he will be.

G. I imagine he went to her of his own head.

T. But do not he and *Richard* lay their heads together ſometimes?

G. You have hit the nail on the head.

T. Some miſchief or other will light on their heads. But this it is to give young men their heads, who do things of greateſt concernment, they care not how, and hand over head.

G. But, if it ſhould come into his Father's head who is one of the heads of the people, that he had any ſuch mind, he would go near to break his head with his ſtaffe next time he met him, though he were ſure to have a ſmart fine ſet on his own head for it afterwards.

T. 'Twere more fit he were bravely leading Souldiers in the head of an Army, than so basely lying in a Ladies lap.

G. In truth it is just as you say. But thus you see, the world rules. Farewel.

DIALOGUE VIII.

Cornelius and *Tiberius.*

C. LIst to, *Tiberius*, Have you read the list of the Sword-players?

T. Yes *Cornelius*, I have read it all over.

C. Hath *Sisennius* listed himself among them?

T. He was not in that list, that I saw.

C. 'Tis like he hath no list, either to enter the lists with any man, or so much as to runn from the lists to the goal.

T. Why should a man undertake, what he hath no list to? Let every man do as he lists.

C. 'Tis a fine thing indeed for a man to live as he lists: but that is not as every man lists.

T. He may do what he lists, that lists to do but what he may.

DIA-

DIALOGUE IX.

Giles and *Humphry.*

G. HOw now *Humphrey*? what makes you so sad? is all well at home?

H. I would it were. For to tell you truly we are in an ill taking for my brother *Harry.*

G. What's the matter?

H. Woe is me! three days agoe, without making any body acquainted with his purpose, he took boat, and went over Sea; and what is become of him we cannot tell.

G. How can you tell that he is gone over Sea?

H. We were told it by one, whose word may be taken: and who came to us on purpose to tell us.

G. Is your Father made acquainted with it yet?

H. Yes, we told him of all.

G. And what said he to it? how did he take it? did he not take on, when he was told it?

H. We were somewhat afraid he should take some harm by it, if we should tell him: but he seemed to take it very patiently. He only said, since folly hath taken so deep root in him, that he will neither take my counsel, nor take example by others to do well, but still takes bad courses, let him take his swing for me, and take his course.

G. I was afraid he should have taken it mightily to heart: but it seems he never takes thought, what becomes of him.

H. You are mightily mistaken *Giles*; for though he makes as though he did not grieve, yet it grieves him to the heart: and you may see it by his words, which, if you take them not in the wrong meaning, do plainly enough shew that he is ill vexed. Take my word for this, he is so troubled in mind, how closely soever he carry it, that he is quite taken

off from buſineſs, and lets all be at ſixes and ſevens.

G. What courſe doe you think your Brother will take now?

H. I ſuppoſe he will take his pleaſure as long as his mony laſts which he took up at uſe before he went, and took away with him, when he went. After, he muſt take his fortune.

G. While he takes theſe ſo wrong courſes, he hardly takes after his Father.

H. No no; he takes not a at all after him. He took a wiſer courſe.

G. But hath he not been uſed to take pains? or is he unable to take any pains?

H. He hath taken ſome pains in ſome kind of ſtudies, which ſome people are mightily taken with. And he muſt ſhortly take his choice, whether he will take pains or ſtarve. For he hath afore now ſpent more mony, than he took with him now, in leſs than a years time.

G. In my mind, it will be the beſt courſe he can take, to come back: and if he doe, no doubt his Father will be glad to ſee him, and within a while take to him again.

H. God forbid elſe. Yet this I aſſure my ſelf of, that when time ſerves he will take him aſide, and take him up ſharply for his going away

G. There is no doubt of this: and it will be but fit for him ſo to doe.

H. God ſend he but come well home; and for the reſt I take no great care.

DIA-

DIALOGUE X.

Orbilius and *Davus*,

O. YOu, Boy, loose this arrant knave's points, and down with his breeches. I'le pay him soundly, and I live. Why don't you stirr? Give me a rod, some body, quickly. Go to, take him upon your back; up with him, I say, aloft.

D. Sir, will you punish me before you have heard me speak for my self? Doe me right, or be no Master.

O. So I will: for I will serve you as you deserve.

D. But that you may not abuse me, hear me I pray you first, what I have to say for my self.

O. As if you could say any thing for your self, that were worth the hearing! a likely matter.

D. Truly Sir, you cannot tell, untill you have heard.

O. Say then quickly, what you have to say.

D. This I say then, that you are too much in passion at present to doe but right in punishing. For it cannot be, that he should observe a measure in punishing, that keeps anger while he punisheth. And therefore doe as *Plato* did, who, as they report, said to his servant, that had done a fault, *but that I am angry, I would beat thee*: and let the punishing of me alone till another time. And do not goe to beat me now in your anger; least you anger it afterwards when it will be too late.

O. How finely the knave plays the Philoſopher! Well, that you may not hereafter ſay, you had to doe with an unreaſonable beaſt, and not with a man of reaſon, I will let you alone for the preſent, and call you to an account hereafter, for what you have done amiſs to day. Let him down.

D. Thus fare well, I have gained time; I may perhaps too get my pardon at laſt. In the mean time I'le have a care to offend no more.

Becauſe

BEcauſe I mentioned above the Tranſlating of the ſame Dialogue two or three times over, and am loath to preſcribe any thing without an example, I have therefore thought good here to add a threefold Tranſlation of the firſt of thoſe of Mr. *Clark*'s my ever to be honoured Maſter, Dialogues, which I ſpake of before. I preſume himſelf, would he have done it, as he hath expreſſed his mind to the contrary, could have done it hugely better, not only as being infinitely more able at every thing, than I am, but alſo as being better acquainted with the meaning of his own words, than I can be. Yet what is done, ſuch as it is, may ſerve for an Exemplification of what is to do; and that's enough for my deſign at preſent. He that likes it not as it is, may be pleaſed to do it of himſelf to his own better liking. There are many lucky hits at Tranſlating ſuch kind of language as this, which a man cannot at all times hit of, and when he pleaſes.

DIA-

DIALOGUE.

Henry. Robert.

H. WHat a world is this! What ſhould a man ſay to it? when every body falls thus foul upon poor and moſt harmleſs innocents: 'tis all one, as the world rules, to be a knave and an honeſt man, now adays.

R. Indeed for the moſt part they fare alike: or rather the better a man is, the worſe is he dealt with all for the moſt part.

H. What wonder, when men are ſo given to lying, and to follow wickedneſs, and give their minds to nothing, but to deviſe miſchief.

R. Men take ſuch bad courſes, that one knows not whom to truſt.

H. Before I take this at their hands, and put up ſo groſs

H. HEm, qui hic rerum ſtatus eſt! quid dicas? cum in pauperculos ſumméque innoxios homunculos nemo non indignè impetum faciat; perinde eſt, ut nunc fit, utrum nebulo ſis, an vir bonus, hoc tempore.

R. Utrique revera eadem, magnam partem uſu-veniunt: vel potius quanto ſanctioribus quis moribus vixerit, tanto fere modis indignioribus tractatur.

H. Quid mirum? cum ita ſunt plerique proclives ad mentiendum, & ad flagitium quodvis perpetrandum, nec ad aliud quicquam adjiciunt animum, quàm ad malum moliendum.

R. Ita pravis vivitur moribus, ut parum conſtet cui quis fidem habeat.

H. Potius quàm iſthuc ab iis accipiam, atque impunè fieri mihi tam inſignitè injuriam patiar, omnia

Henricus.

H. QUÆ hujus mundi conditio est! quid sentias? cum tantis illi passim injuriis afficiantur pauperum qui maximè sunt innocui; eodem recidit, quomodo nunc est, frugíne quis, an nequam homo sit, his temporibus.

R. Similia sanè uterque eorum magnâ ex parte patiuntur; seu potius quo quis vir præstantior fuerit, hoc plurimùm deteriùs cum illo agitur.

H. Quid hoc monstri est? cum adeo strenua detur à plerisque opera mendaciis confingendis omnibusque vitæ turpitudinibus in se admittendis, neq; adjungatur ad aliud quicquam animus nisi ad perniciẽ comminiscendã.

R. Sic flagitiosa à plerisque omnibus vita agitur, ut incertum sit in quo fiducia reponatur.

H. Prius quàm æquo istuc animo feram, adeoque insigni me injuria affici inultus perpetiar, ni-

Robertus.

H O qualis est hæc rerum facies! quid cui possit in mentem venire? quando in pauperiorum quosque innocentiores tam fœde undique à quibusq; incurritur; tantundem est, ut mores sunt, sive quis probus sive improbus fuerit, nunc dierũ.

R. Profectò pariter cum utroque maximam partem agitur; sive potius quo quis homo melior audit, eo plerunque pejora patitur.

H. Haud mirabile est: quando tam sunt homines proni ad mendacia excogitanda, & improbissima quæq; facinora facienda, atque ad nihil applicant animum præterquam machinandum aliis pestem.

R. Adeo pravis plerique utuntur consiliis ut nescias cui fidem habeas.

H. Citius quàm ego isthuc boni consulam, tantamq; factam mihi injuriam impunitam dimittam, nihil

wrongs, I'le do any thing.

R. *You are as much to blame, in that you look to fare better. Ill will never ſpake well. Never take it to heart man.*

H. *Why what muſt I do then?*

R. *I would have you to follow my Counſel, pleaſe God and your own Conſcience, and do your duty in your place.*

H. *If a man be taken tardy and doe amiſs but once, he is ſure to hear of it at every hand.*

R. *Be ruled by me, and never take that to heart, that they ſet at their heeles, and care not a pin for them all.*

H. *'Tis not ſo eaſie a matter as you think, to take theſe things well. God give us patience, for we ſtand in great need thereof.*

R. *Indeed they had as*

nia agam [omnem movebo lapidem.]

R. Simili ipſe in culpâ verſaris, meliore qui loco tuas fore res exſpectes. Mala mens, mala lingua. Ne te propterea afflictes [animi angas.]

H. Quid itaque mihi agendum eſt?

R. Meo de Conſilio velim facias. Deo, animique tui conſcientiæ placeas, & quam es nactus, hanc provinciam ornes.

H. Si quis oſcitans opprimatur, unicâque vel vice titubaverit, non dubium eſt quin magno ei paſſim probro futurum ſit.

R. Auſculta mihi, nec ſit eâ tibi res ſolicitudini, quam illi ſuſque deque habent, quin eos omnes non tanti æſtimes.

H. Haud ita eſt facile, ac tibi videtur, æquo iſta animo tolerare. Donet nobis Deus patientiam; nam illa multum nobis opus eſt.

R. Unum ſanè & idem hil

hil non experiar [cœlo erram miscebo .]

R. Tam in vitio ipse es, quod melius actum iri tecum speras. Malevoli, maledici. Ea noli re te macerare [ægritudini dedere.]

H. Quid me ergo facere oportet?

R. Quod ego tibi dedero consilium, id exsequere, Divino numini mentiq; tuæ recti conscíæ obsecunda, tuumq; pro loci tui ratione officiū cole.

H. Si quis delictum in se admisisse offendatur, semelq; unquam perperam egerit, non deerunt, qui id ei primâ quâque occasione exprobrent.

R. Me audi, neque ullâ sis de eo solicitudine quod hi pro nihilo ducunt, atqui universos illos flocci facias.

H. Majoris est res negotii quàm tu opinaris, æqui boniq; hæc consulere, Patientiâ jdonet nos Deus, hac enim nos quam maximè egemus.

R. Una profecto res est nihil intactum relinquam [Acheronta movebo.]

R. Tua non minor culpa est, cum rectiùs iri tibi consultum vis. Malevolorum nunquam non malus sermo. Hæc te res ne malè habeat [cave cordi tuo doleat.]

H. Quid igitur debebo ego facere?

R. Meam velim auctoritatem & consilium sequare. Deo propriæque mentis conscientiæ more geras, ac tuum quo es loco munus sedulus præstes.

H. Facinore si in ullo deprehendaris, atq; omnino semel lapsus fueris, id tibi ab omnibus, prout res se tulerit, vitio vertetur.

R. Mihi obtempera, nolique ob illud tuum solicitare animum, quod isti sibi despicatui habent, sed illos cunctos nec pili pendas.

H. Non adeo expedita res est atque tu existimas, hæc humaniter ferre. Impertiat nobis Deus patientiā, etenim nos hujus vehementer indigemus.

R. Revera nihil interest utrum

good take a mans purse by the high way side, as to rob him of his good name; and they might even as well hang him out-right, as thus to use him.

hoc est, regiâ eunte viâ marsupium auferre, atq; bonam ejus existimationem lædere, quin æque eum vel patibulo suspendant, atq; modis ita indignis accipiant.

H. *'Tis as dishonourable, for they must answer at God's judgement Seat for the one, as well as at earthly barres for the other.*

H. Æquè inhonestum est, tam enim alterius reddenda est ab iis ratio pro tribunali divino, quàm alterius in foro humano.

R. *'Tis no very strange thing, for thus have they done with the best men ever since the Apostles times.*

R. Non magnopere mirandum est, hoc enim pacto cum virorum optimis ab Apostolicis jam usque temporibus egerunt.

H. *And for any thing I see, there is small hope of mends, men rather grow worse and worse.*

H. Et quantum ego perspicio, quàm exigua illorum corrigendi spes est, potius indies in pejus proficiunt.

R. *Be you content therefore, mind your calling, look to your book, study hard, and follow learning for all that men say or do of you.*

R. Quin tu ergò acquiescas, res tuas sedulò agas, summâ in libros curâ impendas, animũ ad rei literariæ studiũ diligẽter adjungas, plurimũq; operæ ad consequendã eruditionem conferas, ut ut de te populi sermo sit.

H. *I see now he must rise betimes that pleaseth all Farewel.*

A. Experior jam perquam esse difficile placere omnibus. Vale.